ŠKODA

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not allowed without the written consent of Škoda Auto a.s..

All proprietary rights to this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by Škoda Auto a.s..

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: Škoda Auto a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© Škoda Auto a.s. 2024

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

Škoda Partner

Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.

Customer's signature

Prepaid service option

Applies to the Czech Republic

☐ Standard
☐ Plus

☐ Up to 5 years 60,000 km
☐ Up to 5 years 100,000 km
☐ Up to 5 years 150,000 km

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Vehicle owners

1. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle handover documentation

2 Vehicle owners

10 Explanations

12 About the Owner's Manual

14 About this document

15 Simply Clever overview

17 Instructions in the Infotainment system
17 Functionality

20 Vehicle overviews
20 Front and side vehicle area
21 Rear vehicle area
22 Driver's seat
23 Centre console and passenger seat
24 Space under the bonnet

25 Indicator lights
25 Functionality
25 Overview

31 Correct and safe use
31 Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle
31 New vehicle or new parts
31 Regular checks
32 Incorrect vehicle adjustments
32 Sensor and camera maintenance
33 Space under the bonnet
33 Handling fluids
33 12V vehicle battery
34 Using vehicle electrical sockets
34 Before your journey
34 Sitting safely
35 Correct belt webbing arrangement
36 Correct steering wheel position
36 Securing children properly
37 Transporting objects safely
37 Safe driving
39 Stop the vehicle safely
39 Exiting the vehicle
39 Different climatic conditions
39 Emergency calls
42 After an accident

43 Key, locks and alarm
43 Key
45 Central locking
49 Keyless locking
51 Alarm

53 Doors, windows and the boot lid
53 Doors
54 Child safety lock on the rear doors
54 Windows – with electrical operation
56 Rear door window shades
57 Sun visors
57 Boot lid – with manual operation
58 Boot lid – with electric operation
61 Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation
62 Releasing the boot lid

63 Seats, steering wheel and mirrors
63 Front seat – with manual operation
63 Front seats – with electrical operation
64 Seat memory
66 Seat massage function
66 Rear seats
67 Headrests
68 Front armrest
69 Rear armrest
69 Opening in the backrest
70 Steering wheel
71 Interior mirror
72 Exterior mirrors

74 Restraint systems and airbags
74 Seat belts
76 Child seat
80 Fasteners for child seats
86 Airbags
88 Passenger front airbag switch

90 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
90 Exterior lighting
92 Daytime running lights
92 Automatic activation of lights
93 High beam and headlight flasher
93 Turn signal
94 Lights for bad weather
95 Rear fog light
95 Hazard warning lights function
95 Parking lights function
96 Headlights adaptive function
96 The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions
97 High beam Light Assist assistant
98 Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant
99 Replacing light bulbs
100 Interior lighting
101 Interior background lighting
102 Wipers and washers

106 Heating and air conditioning
106 The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
110 Independent air conditioning
112 Windows heating
113 Seat heating and ventilation
114 Steering wheel heating

115 Driver information system
115 Digital cockpit
116 Head-up display with augmented reality
117 Driving data
118 Vehicle status

120 Getting to know the Infotainment system
120 The Infotainment system overview
120 HOME menu
121 Preferred functions
122 Favourite applications
122 Main menu
122 Applications menu
123 Logout screen
123 Configuration assistant
123 System
124 Sound

126 The Infotainment system controls
126 Display controls
127 Keypad
127 Control centre
128 Voice control

132 Radio
132 FM radio
135 DAB radio
138 WEB radio and podcasts

142 Media
142 Audio player
143 File management

147 Mobile devices management
147 Using mobile devices

150 Phone
150 Using the phone
152 Managing contacts
153 Phone conversation
154 Conference call
154 SMS
155 Email
156 Mailbox

157 Wi-Fi
157 Wi-Fi use

160 SmartLink
160 Using the SmartLink function
161 Android Auto
163 Apple CarPlay

166 Navigation
166 Map
168 Finding a destination
170 Predictive destinations
171 Recent destinations
172 Favourite destinations
172 Route guidance
175 Demo mode

176 Online services
176 Škoda Connect
177 MyŠkoda application
178 Data connection
179 Škoda Connect services user registration and activation
179 Setting personal data protection
180 User management
183 Personalisation
183 Over-the-Air update
184 Application updates
185 Shop
186 Information calls

186 Breakdown call
187 Škoda Connect services

188 Starting and driving
188 The ignition is switched on
189 Automatic gearbox
190 Driving modes
191 Regenerative braking
193 Economical driving style
193 Driving with a trailer
194 Tow eye and towing
196 Brakes
197 Electrical parking brake
198 Auto Hold automatic securing of the car
199 Electronic engine sound (e-Sound)

200 Driver assist systems
200 Braking and stabilising systems
202 Front Assist
203 Pedestrian detection
204 Speed limiter
206 Cruise control system
209 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
214 Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane
216 Travel Assist
218 Side Assist – lane change system
220 Traffic sign recognition
221 Proactive passenger protection – Crew Protect Assist
222 Driver Alert fatigue detection
223 Inattention detection
223 Emergency Assist – assistant for emergency situations
224 Eco Assist automatic power regeneration assistant

226 Parking assist systems
226 Park Pilot parking aid
228 Rear view camera
229 Monitoring the surroundings Top View
232 Rear Traffic Alert
233 Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle
234 Smart parking assistant
237 Park assistant with memory function

240 High-voltage system
240 High-voltage system and battery
243 Range
243 Driving performance availability

246 Charging
246 General information on charging
251 Charging with alternating current(AC)
252 Charging with direct current (DC)
254 Charging set-up

258 Charging cables
258 General information on charging cables
259 Charging cable Mode 2
261 Charging cable Mode 3
262 Universal charging cable Mode 2

269 Space under the bonnet
269 The bonnet
270 Coolant

272 12V vehicle battery and fuses
272 12V vehicle battery
275 Using jump start cables
276 Fuses

278 Fuses in the dash panel
280 Fuses in the space under the bonnet

282 Wheels
282 Tyres and rims
284 All-season or winter tyres
285 Snow chains
285 SEAL tyres
285 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
288 Tyre repair kit
290 Tyre pressure
291 Tyre pressure monitor
292 Wheel bolt cover caps
292 Full-width wheel cover

294 Storage space and interior equipment
294 Luggage compartment equipment
295 Emergency equipment
295 Tool kit
296 Fasteners in the boot
298 Securing nets
298 Luggage compartment carpet
299 Boot lid
300 Interior equipment front
301 Interior equipment rear
302 Storage compartment behind the centre console
303 Storage compartment for umbrella
303 Phone box
304 Cup holder
305 Ashtray
305 Blanket
306 Space for a tablet
306 12V power socket
306 230V power socket
307 Bag for stowing charging cables
308 USB inputs

309 Roof rack and the towing bracket
309 Roof rack
309 Towing bracket

315 Maintenance and cleaning
315 Service events
316 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
317 Škoda Prepaid service
317 Interior
319 Exterior

323 Technical data and specifications
323 Technical data regulations
323 Vehicle identification data
324 Stickers and labels
324 Axle weights and loads
325 Operating weight
325 Vehicle dimensions
325 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
326 Personal data
327 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
331 Collection and processing of scrap cars
331 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
332 Product recycling
334 Trademarks Information
334 Preparation for breathalyser
334 Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

338 Specifications of electric motors and high-voltage accumulators
338 132 kW electric motor
338 210 kW electric motor
338 250 kW electric motor

339 Simply Clever
339 230V power socket and USB inputs
339 Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation
340 Cargo elements in the luggage space
340 Rear door window shades
340 Parking permit holder
340 Cup holder
341 Cup holder with the Easy Open function
341 The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment
342 The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment
342 Pencil holder
342 Child safety lock on the rear doors
343 Boot lid – with electric operation
344 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
344 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
344 Rear armrest
345 Phone pocket
345 Storage tray for a card on the driver's side
345 Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area
345 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
346 Storage compartment behind the centre console
346 Organiser in the luggage compartment
346 Sleep package
346 Rear seat belt parking position
347 Personalisation
347 Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats
347 Phone box
347 Space for a tablet
348 Storage compartment for umbrella
348 Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space
348 Storage space for cards and coins
348 SmartLink
349 Bag for stowing charging cables
349 Towing bracket
349 Securing nets
350 USB inputs
350 Lockable removable box under the armrest
350 Removable box under the armrest
351 Heaters
351 Škoda Connect
351 Ice scraper

352 Index

Explanations

Specialist garage
"Specialist garage" is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for Škoda vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a Škoda Authorised workshop or Škoda Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Škoda Service Partner
"Škoda Service Partner" is a garage that is contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to service Škoda vehicles and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Škoda Partner
"A Partner of Škoda" is a company that has been contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to sell new Škoda vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using Škoda Genuine Parts and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Text notes
"**Pressing**" – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

"**Holding**" – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units
Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

Symbols

⚠ DANGER
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE
Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » *page 77*.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology.

This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » *page 17*
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq

About this document

The essentials in a nutshell

With the environment in mind, this printed document contains only basic information about the safety, operation and functions of the vehicle or emergency procedures.

The contents of this document were the subject of a revision at the time your car was manufactured. As a result, some information contained here may not be identical to the digital version of the Owner's Manual, which can be modified and further updated by Škoda Auto if necessary, thanks to the remote update function. Therefore, in the event of a conflict, the information in the digital version of the Owner's Manual will take precedence over the information in this printed document.

This document does not replace the complete Owner's Manual. Therefore, read the complete Owner's Manual before using the vehicle and follow the complete Owner's Manual in the first instance.

The complete Owner's Manual can be found in digital form at the following locations:

› In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » *page 17*
› In MyŠkoda mobile application.
› On Škoda website.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

In case of unavailability of the complete Owner's Manual, use the information or assistance call or seek help from a specialized garage.

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq

Simply Clever overview

- 230V power socket and USB inputs » page 339
- Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation » page 339
- Cargo elements in the luggage space » page 340
- Rear door window shades » page 340
- Parking permit holder » page 340
- Cup holder » page 340
- Cup holder with the Easy Open function » page 341
- The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment » page 341
- The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment » page 342
- Pencil holder » page 342
- Child safety lock on the rear doors » page 342
- Boot lid – with electric operation » page 343
- The clothes hook on the middle door pillar » page 344
- Bag hooks in the luggage compartment » page 344
- Rear armrest » page 344
- Phone pocket » page 345
- Storage tray for a card on the driver's side » page 345
- Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area » page 345
- Storage compartment for the reflective vest » page 345
- Storage compartment behind the centre console » page 346

- Organiser in the luggage compartment » page 346
- Package for sleeping » page 346
- Rear seat belt parking position » page 346
- Personalisation » page 347
- Phone box » page 347
- Space for a tablet » page 347
- Storage compartment for umbrella » page 348
- Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space » page 348
- Storage space for cards and coins » page 348
- SmartLink » page 348
- Bag for stowing charging cables » page 349
- Towing bracket » page 349
- Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats » page 347
- Securing nets » page 349
- USB inputs » page 350
- Heaters » page 351
- Lockable removable box under the armrest » page 350
- Removable box under the armrest » page 350
- Škoda Connect » page 351
- Ice scraper » page 351

Instructions in the Infotainment system

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in this way:

› Tap ▪▪ > 📖 > 📖 on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Tap 🚗 > 📖 > 📖 on the Infotainment system screen.

🛈 If 📖 is not displayed, check for available system updates » *page 124*.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

› How to search
› Interactive images
› Symbols
› Topics
› Tutorial videos
› Simply Clever
› About the manual

Search

1. Tap 🔍.
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

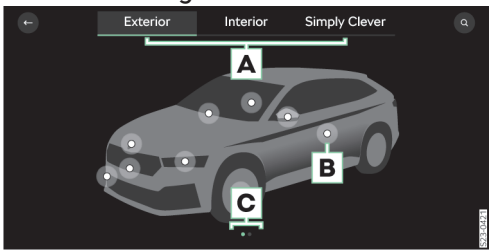
Or:

› Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

🛈

› To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
› When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
› If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

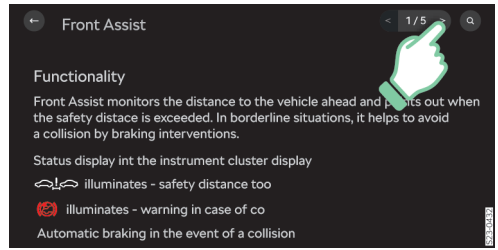
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

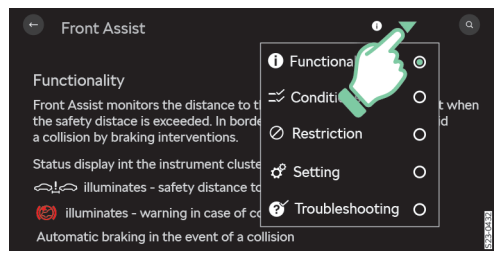


› To display more information, press › or ‹.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car
› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

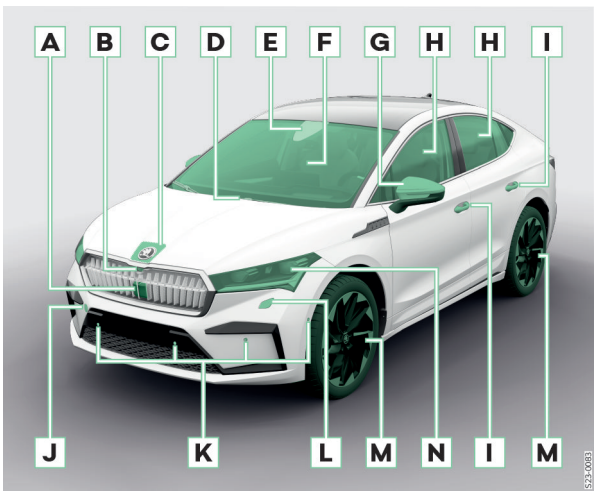
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and side vehicle area



A Front radar sensor for assistance systems (under the cover)

B Assist systems camera

C Bonnet release lock (under the bonnet) » page 269

D Wipers – operation » page 103

E Under the windscreen:
- › Assist systems camera
- › Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 92
- › Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 103
- › Humidity and solar intensity sensors

F Windscreen – heating » page 112

G Wing mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation » page 72
- › Assist systems camera

H Side door windows – control » page 55

I Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Opening the door » page 53
- › Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 49

J Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 194

K Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

L Headlamp washer » page 103

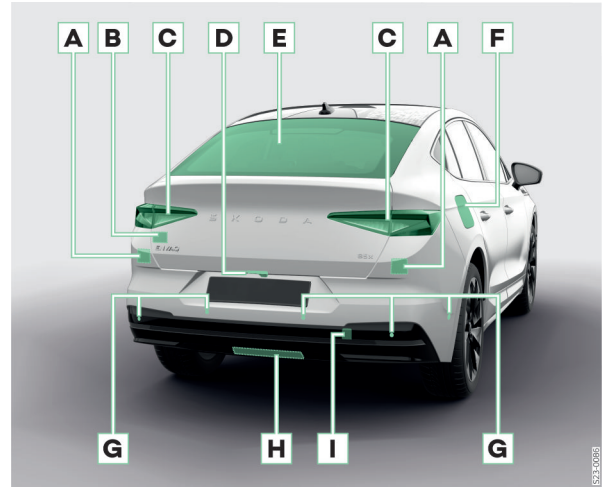
M Wheels:
- › Tyres and rims » page 282
- › Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 285
- › Tyre repair kit » page 289
- › Tyre pressure » page 290
- › Tyre pressure monitor » page 291

N Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation » page 90
- › High beam Light Assist assistant » page 97
- › Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant » page 98
- › Lights for bad weather » page 94
- › Replacing light bulbs » page 99

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 32.

Rear vehicle area



A Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)

B The ice scraper (on the inside of the boot lid)

C Tail lights:
- › Operation » page 90
- › Rear fog light – operation » page 95

  Rear fog light is only on the driver's side
- › Setting up rear lights animation » page 97

D Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Boot lid with manual operation » *page 58*
› Boot lid with electrical operation » *page 59*
› Assist systems camera

E Rear window – heating » *page 112*

F High-voltage battery charging socket cover » *page 247*

G Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

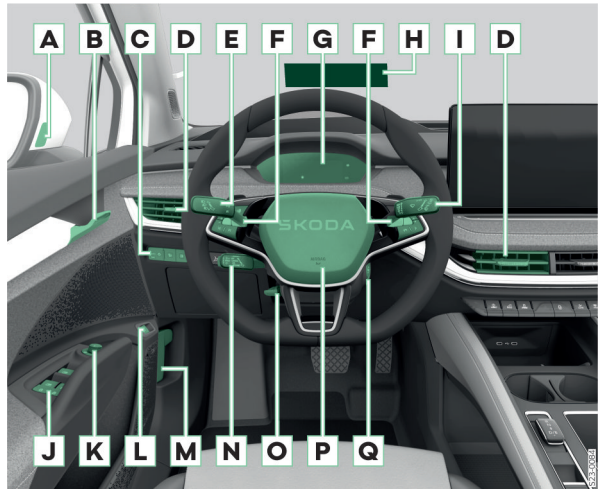
H Towing bracket » *page 309*

I Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » *page 194*

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » *page 32*.

Driver's seat



A Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist » *page 218*

B Door handle » *page 53*

C Light switches:
› Exterior lighting » *page 90*
› Lights for bad weather » *page 94*
› Rear fog light » *page 95*

D Air outlet nozzle

E Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Turn signal *» page 93*
- › High beam and headlight flasher *» page 93*
- › Cruise control system *» page 207*
- › Speed limiter *» page 204*
- › High beam assistant *» page 97*
- › Headlight Assistant *» page 98*

F Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel *» page 70*

G Digital cockpit *» page 115*

H Head-up display (on windscreen) *» page 116*

I Wipers and washers – operation *» page 103*

J Window operation *» page 55*

K Wing mirror operation *» page 72*

L Button for electrically operated boot lid *» page 59*

M Unlocking the bonnet *» page 269*

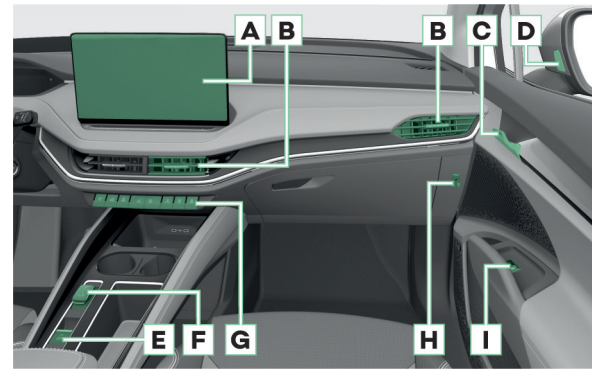
N Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Cruise control system *» page 207*
- › Speed limiter *» page 204*
- › Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) *» page 212*

O Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment *» page 70*

P Steering wheel with horn and driver's front airbag *» page 86*

Q Starter button *» page 188*

Centre console and passenger seat



A The Infotainment system *» page 120*

B Air outlet nozzle

C Door handle *» page 53*

D Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist *» page 218*

E The Ⓟ button – parking brake *» page 197*

F Automatic gearbox selector *» page 189*

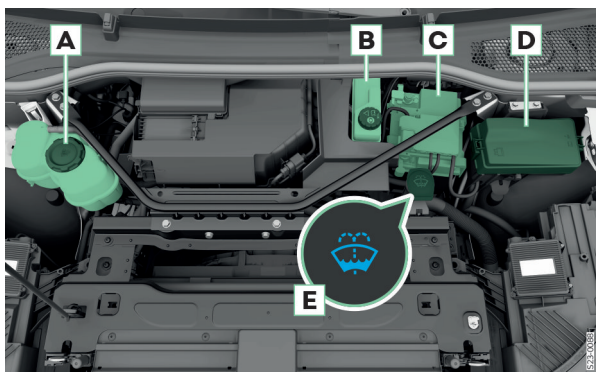
G Buttons (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › ASSIST Access to selection and settings of driving assistance systems
- › MODE Selecting driving mode *» page 190*
- › PARK Parking assistance systems menu *» page 226*

- Hazard warning lights function » page 95
- Central locking » page 46
- Displaying the air conditioning control screen on the Infotainment system screen » page 108
- Quick windscreen defogging/defrosting
- Rear window heating » page 112

H Passenger front airbag switch (on the side of the dashboard) » page 89

I Passenger window operation » page 55

Space under the bonnet



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 270

B Brake fluid reservoir » page 196

C 12V vehicle battery » page 272

D Fuse box » page 280

E Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 103

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding indicator lights and the respective messages on instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system can lead to accidents, serious injuries, damage to the vehicle or a loss of warranty.

Indicator lights indicate the current status of the respective functions or faults.

Illumination of some warning lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages on the instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system.

Warning lights

The warning light can also light up on the display, either alone or together with another indicator light:

⚠ – serious hazard

⚠ – warning

Overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are functioning correctly, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on.

For further details, see ***» page 25, Functionality***.

Link to the digital Owner´s Manual:
https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Symbol	Meaning
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a serious hazard ***» page 25***.
	Unfastened front and rear seat belt ***» page 75***.

Symbol	Meaning
	Proactive passenger protection intervenes » page 222.
	12V vehicle battery is not charging » page 274.
	Insufficient driving performance » page 244, » page 244.
	Coolant level too low » page 271.
	Low brake fluid level » page 197.
	Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 202.
	Together with – fault in brake system and ABS » page 197, » page 202.
	Flashing – parking on a slope with a very high gradient » page 198.
	Illuminated – parking brake engaged » page 197.
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 71.
	Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 71.
	Take over steering immediately » page 216.

Symbol	Meaning
	Emergency Assist intervenes » page 224.
	Electric drive system fault » page 242.
	High-voltage battery -– fire hazard » page 242.
	Together with – overheated electrical system » page 242.
	Warning if there is a risk of collision » page 202, » page 204.
	ACC is not braking sufficiently » page 211.
	High concentration of CO2 » page 110.
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a warning » page 25.
	Low charge level of the high-voltage battery » page 249.
	Limited driving performance » page 244, » page 244.
	Fault / Low battery charge of the 12V vehicle battery » page 274.
	Windscreen washer fluid too low » page 104.

Symbol	Meaning
	Light sensor and rain sensor fault » page 93, » page 104.
	Wipers fault » page 104.
	Light bulb fault » page 91.
	The lights are not switched on » page 90.
	Rear fog light on » page 95.
	Together with – regenerative braking fault » page 192.
	Electric drive system fault » page 242.
	Electronic engine sound fault » page 199.
	ABS malfunction » page 202.
	Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 202.
	Worn brake pads » page 197.
	Tyre pressure display fault » page 292.
	Tyre pressure change » page 284, » page 291.

Symbol	Meaning
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 71.
	flashes – steering column lock not active » page 71.
	Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 71.
	KESSY – no key found » page 51.
	KESSY – problem with switching on the ignition » page 189.
	Adaptive chassis fault » page 191.
	Passenger front airbag switched on » page 89.
	Passenger front airbag switched off » page 89.
	Illuminated together with OFF – airbag switch fault » page 89.
	Airbag system fault » page 88.
	Proactive passenger protection fault » page 222.
	Illuminates for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device » page 88.

Symbol	Meaning
	Unsecured tow bar » page 312.
	The ESC Sport is activated. » page 200, » page 201.
	Deactivated ASR » page 201.
	Illuminates – ESC or ASR malfunction » page 201.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR is engaged » page 200, » page 200.
	Deactivated Front Assist » page 203.
	Front Assist inaccessible » page 203.
	Unavailable ACC » page 214.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 219.
	Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 233.
	Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant » page 234.
	Emergency Assist malfunction » page 224.
	Malfunction of Fatigue detection » page 223.

Symbol	Meaning
	Park Pilot malfunction » page 227.
	Malfunction of driver inattention assistant » page 223.
	Travel Assist malfunction » page 218.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 214.
	Lane Assist is deactivated » page 214.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 215.
	Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display » page 221.
	High concentration of CO2 » page 110.
	Fault in the CO2 concentration sensor. » page 110.
	The left turn signal » page 93, » page 94.
	The right turn signal » page 93, » page 94.
	Trailer turn signal » page 94.

Symbol	Meaning
	Automatic transmission locked » page 189.
HOLD	Auto Hold secures the vehicle » page 199.
	The high-voltage battery is charging » page 252, » page 253.
	Lane Assist is activated and prepared to intervene » page 214.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit » page 211.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey » page 211.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout. » page 211.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction » page 211.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed » page 211.
	Cruise control regulates the vehicle's speed » page 207.
 LIM	Illuminated – the speed limiter regulates the speed of the vehicle » page 204.

Symbol	Meaning
	The Travel Assist is activated. » page 216.
	Travel Assist activated – cruise control is regulating the speed » page 216.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 216.
	Low outside temperature » page 115.
	High beam or headlight flasher is on » page 93.
	Light Assist activated – the high beam is on » page 97.
	Head Light Assist activated – the high beam is on » page 98.
	Lane Assist is activated, but it is not prepared to intervene » page 214.
HOLD	The Auto Hold is activated. » page 199.
	Take over driving » page 216.
	Light Assist activated » page 97.
	Head Light Assist activated » page 98.
	Service events » page 315.

Symbol	Meaning
	Speed limiter fault » page 206.
	Illuminated – speed limiter activated » page 204.
	The ACC is activated. » page 211.
	Deactivated ACC » page 211.
	Cruise control deactivated » page 207.
	Speed limiter deactivated » page 204.
	Cruise control system fault » page 208.
	Cruise control active » page 207.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 203.
	Failure to keep a safe distance » page 202.
	Pause recommendation » page 222.
	Inattention detected alert » page 223.
	Normal driving mode » page 190.

Symbol	Meaning
	Eco driving mode » page 190.
	Comfort driving mode » page 190.
	Individual driving mode » page 190.
	Sport driving mode » page 190.
	Traction driving mode » page 190.
	Unavailable map data for Dynamic road sign display » page 220.
	Incorrect warning settings for Dynamic road sign display » page 220.
	Bad weather lights on » page 94.

Correct and safe use

Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully to ensure that you are using the vehicle correctly.
- When using the vehicle, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the country of use, e.g. those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic, etc.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the vehicle technical parameters. Obstacles that exceed the vehicle's ground clearance » page 325 can damage the vehicle.
- Take care when carrying out operational, maintenance and self-assistance tasks to avoid damage or injury. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- When pushing the car, be careful not to damage the rear lights, rear spoiler and bodywork.
- Work on the vehicle's safety systems (seat belts and airbag system) may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This could include the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, follow the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's manual. These include car seats, roof racks, compressors, etc.
- Always observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide optimum braking during the first 800 km – they must be worn off first. So drive with extra care.

New tyres

New tyres do not provide optimum grip for the first 500 km. So drive with extra care.

Regular checks

What you should be mindful of before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Repair any defects before driving. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Are the tyres undamaged?

- Is the tyre tread depth sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlights, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine brake fluid level and the coolant level OK?
- Are the air outlet nozzles and air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades frozen?
- Are all seat belt system components in good working order? Are the seat belts clean and the buckles free from obstruction?
- Are the spoilers undamaged?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there stains of operating fluids under the vehicle?
- Are there any damaged components of the high-voltage system, e.g. orange high-voltage cables?

Incorrect vehicle adjustments

Incorrect changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect the vehicle's safety-relevant and other functions.

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be limited for the following reasons:

- Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
- There is a load secured on the roof rack, e.g. a roof box
- The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.
- Sensor calibration is in progress:
  - During the first kilometres of driving with the new car
  - After repair of sensors or systems using sensors

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

- Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
- If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Attach the front number plate directly to the bumper without using the number plate holder.

Space under the bonnet

Before you open the bonnet

Risk of scalding! Do not open the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the label in the area under the bonnet



Do not touch the area under the bonnet!

Beware of hot parts!

Beware of rotating parts!

When working in the area under the bonnet

› Keep children well away from the area under the bonnet.
› Observe the safety instructions listed in the chapter on the high-voltage system *» page 240, What you should be mindful of*.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system and on the 12V vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke and keep open flames and sparks near the area under the bonnet.
› Do not leave any objects in the area under the bonnet.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. This is the electrolyte in the 12V vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the ignition switched on.
› If your skin is stained by operating fluids, wash the affected areas with warm water and soap. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
› Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12V vehicle battery

Handling the 12V vehicle battery

The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is very caustic. Incorrect handling of the 12V vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

› When handling the 12V vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.

- Do not tilt the 12V vehicle battery, as it may leak the battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Should electrolyte get into your eyes, rinse them immediately with water. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12V vehicle battery.
- Risk of short circuit Do not connect the poles of the 12V vehicle battery.

Using vehicle electrical sockets

Incorrect use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch the sockets that have become warm.
- Protect the sockets from liquids.
- If fluid does enter the power socket, dry it out completely before reusing.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

Before you set off

- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
- Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
- Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
- Stop charging and close the charging socket.
- Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Tell your fellow passengers to do the same.
- Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
- Only 1 person can be secured with one seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
- Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.
- Do not leave any objects in the driver's footwell. They can get into the pedal area and restrict the pedal control.
- Always fix the floor mats securely in the driver's pedal area.
- Wear footwear that does not interfere with the safe operation of the pedals.

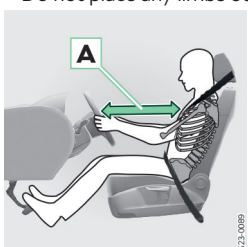
Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

- Adjust the seat backrests to an upright position so that the whole of your back rests on them. If the front passenger seat

backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.

› Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
› Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
› The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
› Keep your feet in the footwell.
› Use the entire seat.
› Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
› Do not place any limbs out the window.



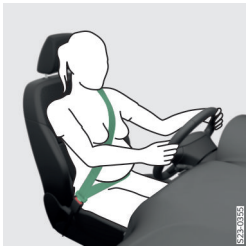
› Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least. 25 cm.
› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance from the dashboard at least 25 cm.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important to ensure that the seat belts offer the best possible protection.



› The shoulder belt must run down the centre of the shoulder, not across the neck.
› The shoulder belt must fit snugly against the body (it must not lead over multi-layered loose clothing).
› The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
› The webbing must not be pinched or twisted or rub against sharp edges.
› The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects under clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
› The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing to adjust the seat belt according to body size.



› For pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that there is no pressure on the abdomen.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and do not secure the child and yourself with one seat belt.

› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 78.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children who have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. This can result in life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume an incorrect sitting position during the journey, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – if the airbag system triggers, they could be seriously injured or killed.

Child secured in an incorrect sitting position is at risk from the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

Child properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

› Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to fifty times their weight. The 1.5 l water bottle can be ejected with the motion energy equivalent to a mass of 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow items so that they do not restrict the driver's ability to operate the vehicle.
› Keep the driver footwell clear.
› Only use laptops or other mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary.
› Stow small items in the storage boxes.
› Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
› Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
› Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
› Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage.
› Do not leave closed bottles of liquids in the car. Closed bottles can explode due to heat or burst due to frost.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
An electric car is hardly audible when driving or stopping. Other road users may not hear it.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Using assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assistance systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

Water must not penetrate into the vehicle systems.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, and do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.

› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely

If the vehicle is not safely secured against moving off, it can do so spontaneously and cause an accident.

› Choose a place with a suitable surface for parking; always park the car on a solid and level surface.

› Pay extra attention on downhill surfaces with reduced grip such as snow, ice, mud or sand.

› Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves or spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts may cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle.

› Injuries can occur when handling seats, releasing the parking brake etc.

› The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.

› In emergency situations it may not be possible to leave the vehicle or resolve the situation.

› Very high or very low temperatures may pose a danger to life.

› The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked. This makes it impossible to open the doors or windows from the inside.

  › Turn off the SAFE function, if some persons remain in the locked vehicle » *page 45*.

Different climatic conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different climatic conditions from those specified, contact a Škoda Partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to drive the car in your country?

› Are there any measures that need to be taken to ensure that the car is fully functional?

› Do any measures need to be taken to prevent damage to the vehicle, e.g. changing the coolant, the 12V vehicle battery, taking care of the high voltage battery, etc.?

Emergency calls

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.

› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.

› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle. The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least 3 years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

› Current position of the vehicle at the time of the emergency call

› Two other vehicle positions shortly before the emergency call is triggered (driving route)

› Vehicle identification number (VIN)

› Vehicle drive type

› Vehicle type

› Type of emergency call initiation (automatic or manual)

› Call type (test or emergency call)

› Direction in which the car was travelling when the emergency call was triggered

› Direction of the accident

› Reduction of the car speed in the longitudinal direction in the event of an accident

› Reduction of the car speed in the transverse direction in the event of an accident

› Time of activation of the emergency call

› Reliability of position data

› Dataset version

› Counter of records transmitted during a call

› Number of passengers

The vehicle location data is continuously overwritten so that only the last three stored locations are available, which are necessary for the correct operation of the emergency call. The car can therefore not be permanently tracked.

The data is only processed to ensure the correct functioning of the emergency call. The data is automatically deleted from the system 13 hours after the emergency call has been initiated.

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

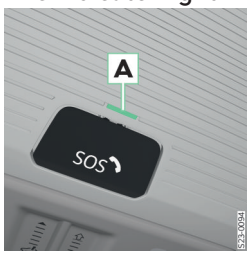
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

The indicator light



The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

- Illuminated green – the system is functional
- Flashing green – a call is in progress with the emergency line
- Illuminated red – there is a fault in the system, seek immediate assistance from a professional garage
- Not illuminated – the system is inoperative due to prolonged unavailability of the mobile network. If this condition persists, seek assistance from a professional garage

Operation

The emergency call button is under the cover marked with the SOS symbol.

Manual call



- To **open** the cover, press against it.



1. Keep the SOS button pressed down.
2. Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre on the Infotainment screen.

To cancel dialling

- To cancel dialling to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again.

Or:

- Cancel dialling using the Infotainment system screen.

🛈 A call can be made manually, for example to report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Closing the cover

› Push the cover until it clicks audibly.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

🛈 If the airbags or seat belt tensioners are activated in an accident, the high-voltage system will be automatically deactivated at the same time.

Safety systems

After an accident, the vehicle's safety systems, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

› Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.

› Have the damaged, loaded or triggered safety system components replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not attempt to extinguish the fire yourself.

› Do not stay near the burning vehicle.

Key, locks and alarm

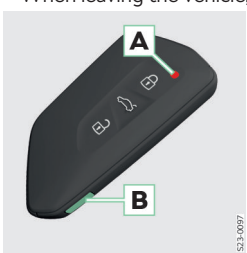
Key

Overview

⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) can lock the vehicle, switch on the ignition or use electrical equipment such as the control buttons for the windows.

› When leaving the vehicle, keep the keys with you.



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light in the key
- **B** Locking button for removing the key part

ⓘ NOTICE

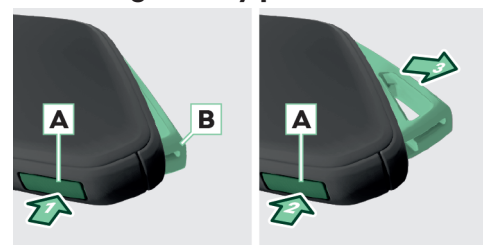
› Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

› Keep the grooves in the key clean.

ⓘ The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

ⓘ If you lose your key, contact your Škoda Service Partner who will provide you with a replacement key.

Removing the key part



1. Press the safety button **A**.

   The **B** key fob folds out.
2. Press again the **A** safety button.
3. Remove the key part.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

› The warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed.

Or:

› The display in the instrument cluster shows a message that the battery needs to be replaced.

› Replace the battery » *page 44, Replacing the key battery*.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

This may be because:

› The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » *page 44, Replacing the key battery*.

Or:

› The key is not synchronised.

Synchronise the key as follows:

1. Press any button on the key.
2. Unlock the door with the key via the locking cylinder within 1 min. » *page 48*.

ⓘ If necessary, the key must be synchronised if a button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the remote control's effective range.

Replacing the key battery

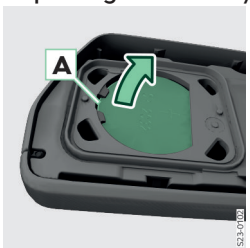
The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery

Removing the battery cover



1. Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.
2. Push downwards against the key fob to release the top cover.
3. Open the battery cover.

Replacing the battery



1. Insert a thin screwdriver into the A hole and remove the battery.
2. Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
3. Insert the new battery.
4. Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.

› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

ⓘ If you are unsure about how the battery should be replaced, we recommend contacting your Škoda Service Partner.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system simultaneously unlocks and locks all doors, the charging socket cover and the boot lid.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

ⓘ If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster screen.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring *» page 52, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking and unlocking

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

All doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the speed of 15 km/h is reached. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The vehicle will unlock automatically in an accident when the airbags are activated. Automatic unlocking allows help to access the car in an emergency situation.

You can also unlock the car in one of the following ways:

› Open some of the doors from the inside.
› Press the central locking button

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

› Key *» page 43*
› Keyless locking (KESSY) *» page 49*
› Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

› Press the button in the middle part of the dash panel.

The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks or unlocks all the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Settings

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Central locking*.

All doors

All doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover unlock.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Applies to vehicles with keyless locking system:

Gripping the driver's door handle unlocks the driver's door and the charging socket cover. The other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked when you grip the door handle again.

Holding any other handle unlocks all the doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the charging socket cover are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

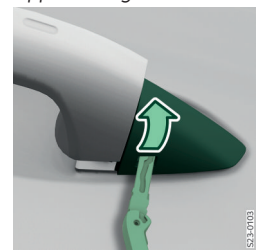
Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

- The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
- It then lights up continuously.
- After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
- Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

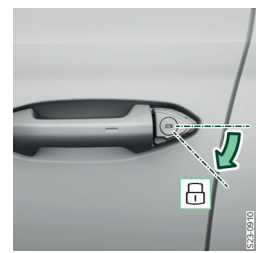
The vehicle cannot be locked – the key battery is flat

Applies to right-hand drive.



Removing the cover:

1. Pull and hold the left front door handle.
2. Insert the key part into the slot on the underside of the cover.
3. Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
4. Release the door handle.



Locking:

1. Take the passenger seat.
2. Close all doors.
3. Lock the vehicle with the central locking button.
4. Get out of the vehicle and close the doors.
5. Insert the key part into the lock cylinder so that the key fob faces the rear of the car.
6. Lock the door.
7. Check that the vehicle is locked.

Fitting the cover:

1. Pull the door handle and hold it.
2. Replace the cover.
3. Release the door handle.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Removing and fitting the door cover with lock cylinder



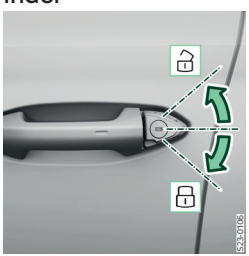
Removing the cover:

1. Pull and hold the left front door handle.
2. Insert the key part into the slot on the underside of the cover.
3. Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
4. Release the door handle.

Fitting the cover:

1. Pull the door handle and hold it.
2. Replace the cover.
3. Release the door handle.

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



1. Insert the key part into the lock cylinder so that the key fob faces the rear of the car.
2. Unlock/lock.

Unlocking will unlock only the driver's door.

Locking will lock all doors.

› Check that the vehicle is locked.

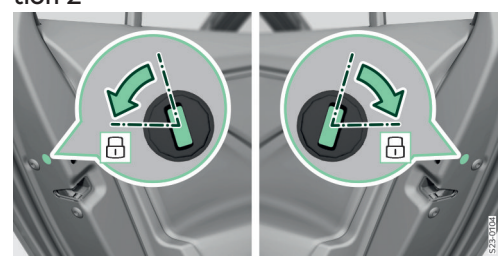
Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 1



1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
3. Use the key part or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.
4. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 2



1. Open the door.
2. On a vehicle equipped with a slot cover, remove the cover.
3. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
4. Turn the key or the flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (sprung position).
5. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Use

The keyless locking system (KESSY) allows you to unlock and lock the car without actively using the key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

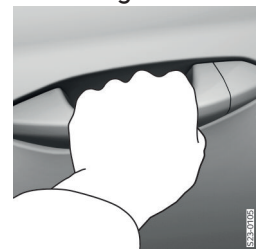
The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

Also vehicles without keyless locking system have a dent in the door handle.

If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

When using the functions of automatic unlocking when the key is close to the car and automatic locking when leaving the car, the battery in the key discharges faster.

Unlocking



1. Hold the door handle.
2. Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Automatic unlocking when the key is close to the vehicle

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically unlock when the key is brought close to the vehicle.

If individual doors or doors on one side of the vehicle are set to unlock, the vehicle will not unlock when the key is in the vicinity of the rear of the vehicle.

Automatic locking when leaving the car

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically lock when the key is removed from the car.

The direction indicator lights flash once to confirm that the car is locked.

If the car is not locked, an audible signal will sound twice.

If there are people in the locked car and they open the door from the inside 30 seconds after locking it, the alarm is triggered.

This applies to cars equipped with the SAFE function:

After automatic locking, when the key is removed from the car, the SAFE function is deactivated.

A beep sounds once to confirm that the car is locked and the SAFE function is deactivated.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If you lock the key in the boot, you can still open the boot lid within 2 minutes.

NOTICE

If you lock the key in the car or in the luggage compartment and it is covered by a phone, laptop or similar device, the key signal may be obscured and the car will not unlock automatically.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

   Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
3. To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

   The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanent deactivation of keyless locking

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Opening and closing* > *KESSY*.

Activating/deactivating automatic unlocking when the key is in the vicinity of the vehicle

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

Activation/deactivation of automatic locking when leaving the car

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Lock vehicle when walking away*.

Troubleshooting

Keyless locking fault

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Automatic deactivation of keyless locking

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function may be deactivated automatically. The function will be accessible on the driver's door handle only.

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

No key found when the ignition is switched on


illuminated
Message: No key found in the vehicle

› Put the key in the vehicle.

Or:

› If the key is in the box with the Phone box function that is charging your phone, remove the key from the box.

Alarm

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is automatically activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

› Opening the bonnet
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement inside the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop in the vehicle's power network.
› The trailer is disconnected
› Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder
› Rear window is broken

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Conditions

The alarm system will only operate correctly when all the windows are closed.

The trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing bracket.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
- ✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm, a warning alarm will sound.

🛈 Deactivate the alarm before connecting or disconnecting the trailer.

Settings

The following alarm functions can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing alert

Deactivation also disables the SAFE function ***» page 45, Functionality***.

Deactivation

› Press twice the 🔒 button on the key within 2 seconds.

Or:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* item and deactivate interior monitoring function.

The deactivated functions are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

🛈 Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

🛈 After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Troubleshooting

Alarm fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Doors, windows and the boot lid

Doors

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

A badly closed door can open while you are driving.

› Pull over, close the door and check that it is fully closed and secure.

⚠ WARNING

An open door may close in strong winds or on a gradient even if it is partially secured by the door limiter.

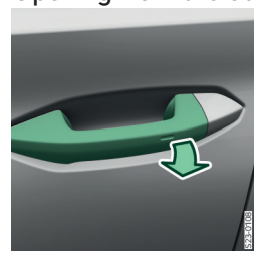
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the door when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area.

Operation

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle.

Opening from the inside



1. Pull the inner handle.
2. Push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

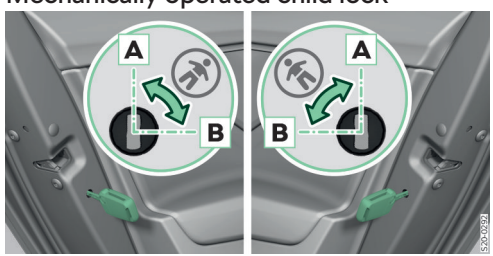
› Hold the handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child lock



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock turned off

B Child lock turned on

Electrically operated child lock



› Press the **left** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **right** rear door.

Activation of the safety lock is signalled by a light in the button.

After the safety lock is activated, the electric window control in the corresponding door is also locked.

Windows – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed again for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted and the window moves back several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, and the obstacle has not been removed, the closing process will be stopped. At this time, it is not possible to close the windows automatically by pulling the button up completely. However, the force limiter is functional.

The force limiter will not operate if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close at full force! If you wait more than 10 seconds, the force limiter will be switched on again.

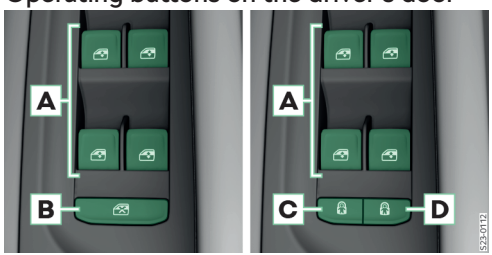
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the windows are fitted with a force limiter, exercise caution when closing them.

Overview

Operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on vehicle equipment:

A Window control buttons

B Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors.

C Deactivating/activating the button in the left rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) » page 54, Operation

D Deactivating/activating the button in the right rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) » page 54, Operation

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press and hold the respective button lightly until the window opens to the desired position.

Or:

› Press the control down and the window opens automatically. Pressing the control again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› Pull the respective button lightly up and hold it until the window closes to the desired position.

Or:

› Push up the corresponding control until it stops; the window closes automatically. Pushing the control up again stops the closing process.

ⓘ After the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be opened and closed for about 10 minutes, provided none of the doors is opened.

Opening all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button fully depressed down to operate the driver's window.

Closing all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button all the way up to operate the driver's window.

Or:

› On vehicles with keyless locking, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle.

Closing he windows is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

Settings

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the window operation item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator stops working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism may be overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window does not operate after the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected.

› Activate window operation ***» page 56, Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery***.

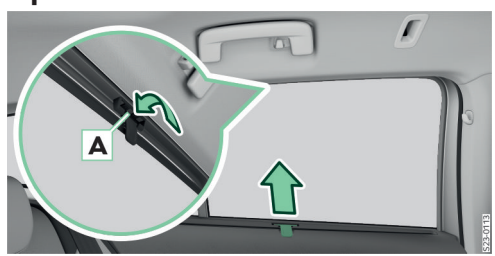
Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery

Automatic window operation activation

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Push up the respective button and the window closes.
3. Release the button.
4. Push up the button up again and hold it for 1 second.

Rear door window shades

Operation



Shading

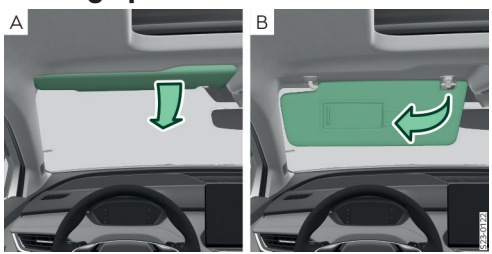
› Pull the sunshade out by the handle and insert it into the A bracket.

Winding

› Remove the sunshade by the handle from the bracket and let it slowly wind up.

Sun visors

Folding up and down



A Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen.

B Swivel the front visor towards the door.

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.

› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

⚠ NOTICE

› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the lid prop!

› Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.

› Do not touch the strut rods with gloves or other textile objects.

› Do not push against the rods.

Operation

Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, hold the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

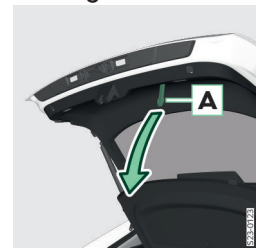
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of the tailgate opening while driving!

› Make sure the lock is secure when the lid is closed.

Settings

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The lid's automatic locking delay can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electric operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.

› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

NOTICE

› Do not operate the lid manually while it is moving.
› Before operating the lid, check that there are no obstructions in the opening and closing area that could damage the lid. Also check that there are no objects in the immediate area of the of the vehicle that could damage the interior of the vehicle and the items being transported.
› If the lid hits an obstacle while opening, it will stop and an audible signal will sound.

NOTICE

› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the lid prop!

› Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.
› Do not push against the rods.

Operation

The lid handle



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

The button in the lid



› Press the button to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The button in the door



› To open the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid starts to open.
› To close the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid is fully closed.
› Pull or release the button to stop the lid from moving.

The button on the key



› Hold the button to open or close the lid, or to stop its movement.

Closing applies only to vehicles with keyless locking system. The key must not be in the car and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the lid.

The lid can also be closed by briefly pulling the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of the tailgate opening while driving!
› Make sure the lock is secure when the lid is closed.

Settings

Setting and storing the top position of the lid

It is advisable to adjust the top position of the lid, e.g. if the space for opening is limited by the height of the garage.

1. Stop the lid in the desired position.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Restoring the lid to its default upper position

1. Carefully manually raise the lid all the way up.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

Lid does not respond to opening signal

› Remove any obstruction, e.g. snow.

Or:

› Press the handle in the lid and lift the lid up.

Or:

› Release the lid manually » page 62.

Lid does not respond to closing signal

› Close the lid manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Close the lid slowly, pushing on the centre of the rear edge of the lid as the lid clicks into the lock.

An intermittent tone sounds when the lid closes by itself, for example under the weight of snow.

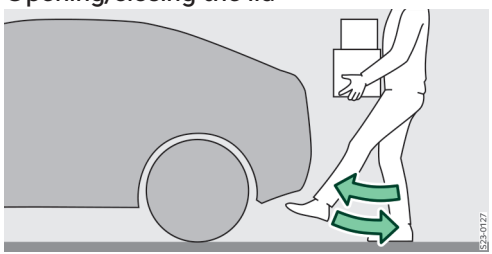
Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition is switched off.
- ✓ You have the key to the vehicle with you.
- ✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



1. Stand behind the centre of the rear bumper.
2. Swing your foot smoothly under the bumper and back.

If the bonnet does not move, wait a few seconds and repeat the motion.

Lid opening/closing signal

The direction indicator lights flash twice when the lid is being opened or closed. In addition, an audible signal sounds when the lid is being closed.

Stop/resume lid movement

You can stop the lid movement by smoothly swinging your foot. The lid movement is resumed by a subsequent swing of your foot.

⚠ CAUTION

Some activities at the rear of the car may cause the lid to be opened or closed unintentionally.

› If necessary, deactivate the contactless operation of the boot power lid » *page 61, Settings*.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Heavy rain
› Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Easy Open* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Easy Open* item.

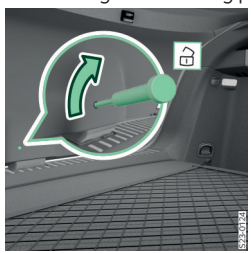
It is recommended to deactivate the feature in the following cases:

› Installing the roof rack
› Connecting a trailer or other accessories to the towing bracket
› Washing the vehicle
› Maintenance and repairs to the rear of the vehicle

Releasing the boot lid

Self-help

If the boot lid does not open, it can be released manually from inside using the following procedure:



1. Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the lid lining
2. Release the boot lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

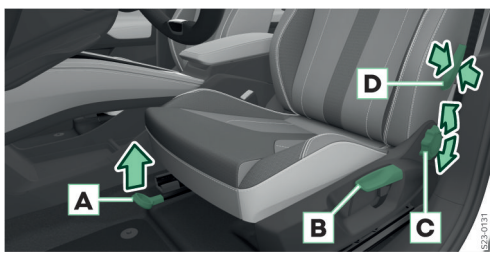
Seats, steering wheel and mirrors

Front seat – with manual operation

Operation

⚠ WARNING

› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



A Adjusting in longitudinal direction
The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.

B Adjusting the height

C Backrest tilt adjustment
Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.

D Adjusting the lumbar support: degree of curvature

ⓘ After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

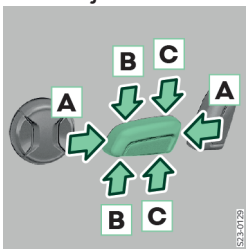
Front seats – with electrical operation

Operation

⚠ WARNING

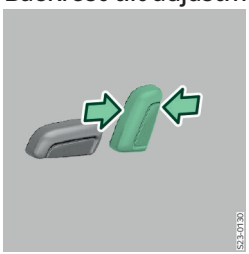
› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.

Seat adjustment

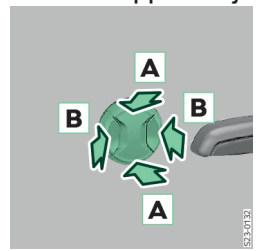


- **A** Adjusting in longitudinal direction
- **B** Tilt adjustment
- **C** Adjusting the height

Backrest tilt adjustment



Lumbar support adjustment



- **A** Curvature adjustment
- **B** The degree of curvature adjustment

Passenger seat adjustment with driver's seat controls

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: > > .

   The menu must be displayed during adjustment.
2. Adjust the passenger seat using the driver's seat controls.

Synchronization of the passenger seat with the driver's seat

The function allows you to adjust the passenger seat to the same position as the driver's seat.

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system: > > .
2. Hold the *Synchronise* button pressed down.

Seat memory

Functionality

Applies to models with an electric driver seat operation

Each memory button on the driver's seat allows you to store and then recall a set position for the seat and wing mirrors.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the passenger seat may also be equipped with memory.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

The driver's seat can be equipped with a convenience entry function, depending on vehicle equipment.

If the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened, the seat is moved to an easy access position.

When the door is closed and the ignition switched on, the seat returns to the stored position.

Passenger seat – convenience entry function

The passenger seat can be equipped with a convenience entry function, depending on vehicle equipment.

When the passenger door is opened, the seat is moved to an easy access position.

When the door is closed, the seat returns to the stored position.

Operation

Control with the ignition off and the driver's door open

› Press the desired memory button to **retrieve** a stored position.

› To **stop** changing the position, press any button on the seat being adjusted or on the key, except for the button for adjusting lumbar support and the button on the seat.

Control in other cases

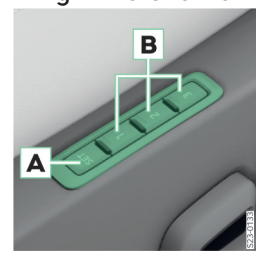
› Hold down the desired memory button to **retrieve** a stored position.

› To **stop** the change of position, release the memory button.

You can control the passenger seat in a similar way.

Settings

Saving the position of the driver's seat and the wing mirrors for forward movement



1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Adjust the seat and the wing mirrors.
3. Press the A button and within 10 seconds press one of the memory buttons B (depending on vehicle equipment, there are 2 or 3 buttons).

Saving is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

ⓘ You can store the seat position if the angle of inclination between the seat and the backrest is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in one of the extreme positions.

Saving the position of the passenger's seat

Position of the passenger's seat can be saved in the same way as the driver's seat position.

Saving the position of wing mirror on the passenger's side for reversing

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.

3. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
4. Select the *Mirrors* item and activate the folding wing mirror function.
5. Switch the wing mirror control to **R** position.
6. Engage reverse gear.
7. Set the mirror to the desired position.
8. Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is stored in memory.

ⓘ When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Convenience entry function

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

> > > *Interior* > *Seats*

Or:

> >

Seat massage function

Switching on/off



› Press the button.

The function switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

Rear seats

Folding down

Before folding down

1. Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
2. Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded-down backrests.
3. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

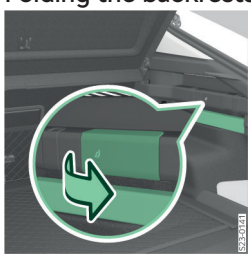
Seat belts must not be fastened when you are handling the backrests.

Folding the backrests from the passenger space



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

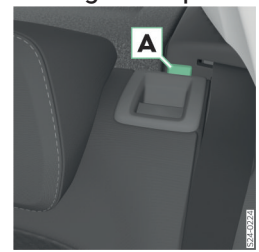
Folding the backrests from the luggage space



› Pull on the handle at A.

The backrest is released and partially folded down.

Folding back up



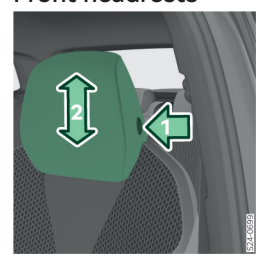
1. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
2. Fold the seat backrest back up.

   The release handle should click audibly into place.
3. Check that the backrest is locked in place. The A pin must not be visible.

Headrests

Settings

Front headrests



1. Press the safety catch and hold it.
2. Move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests

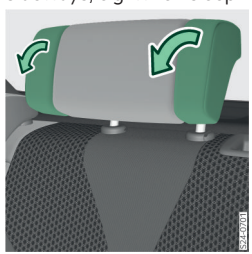


› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing it down, press and hold the locking button.

Folding headrest parts at the rear

The folded side parts restrict the free movement of the head sideways, e.g. when sleeping.

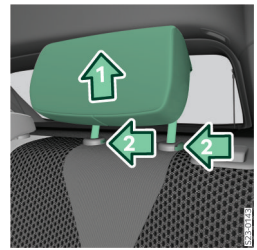


1. Adjust the headrest to the first extended position.
2. Fold down the side parts of the headrest.

Removing and inserting

Removing the rear headrests

› Partially fold the respective backrest down.



1. Move the headrest up to the stop.
2. Press the locking buttons and at the same time remove the headrest.

Inserting the rear headrests

› Insert the headrest into the backrest.

The locking button must click into place.

Front armrest

Settings



Height adjustment:

› Lift the armrest into one of the locking positions

Folding down:

› Lift the armrest above the highest locking position and fold it down.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!

› The front armrest must be folded down or raised to one of the locked positions when driving.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the armrest with care.

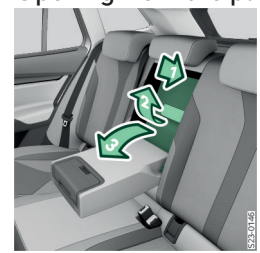
ⓘ NOTICE

Do not sit on the armrest.

Opening in the backrest

Folding up and down

Opening from the passenger space



1. Press the top of the lid.
2. Pull on the release handle.
3. Lower the lid.

Opening from the luggage compartment



1. Press the safety catch.
2. Lower the lid.

Closing

› Close the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks audibly.

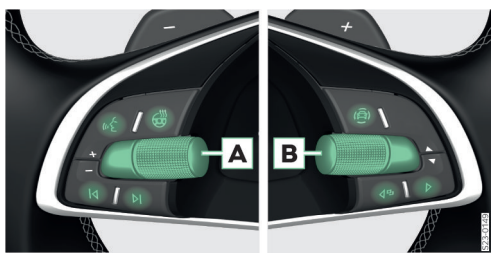
When closed, the red mark on the rear of the lid must not be visible above the safety catch.

⚠ WARNING

› Use the opening in the backrest only for transporting skis in the secured bag of the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- Switching voice control on/off
- Steering wheel heating » page 114

A **Turning** – adjusting the volume
Pressing – switching the sound on/off

- Switching to the next track/station played
- Switching to the previous track/station played
- Switching some assist systems

B **Turning** – switching/setting
Pressing – confirming

The ◁ and ▷ are used for controlling the digital cockpit » page 116.

Settings

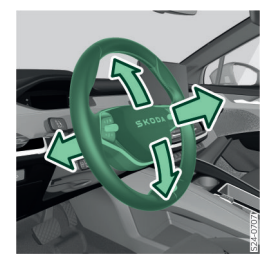
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› The steering wheel position can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



› Pull the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering fault

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminates – partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, you may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock fault

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Once the ignition has been switched off, it is no longer possible to switch on ignition, lock the steering or switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not active

flashing
Message indicating the required steering wheel movement

1. Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
2. If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interior mirror

Functionality

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled by the sensors in the mirror once the ignition is switched on.

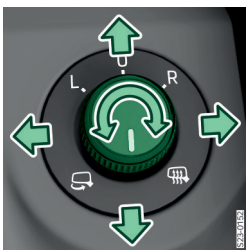
⚠ CAUTION
Risk of an accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

Operation

Positions of the control



- **L** Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror
- **0** Switching off operation
- **R** Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
- Folding the mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different control position)
- Heating the mirrors with the ignition switched on

Adjusting the mirror surface

1. Select the position **L** or **R**.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

ⓘ The vehicle is not necessarily locked when the mirrors fold in. Vehicle locking is indicated by flashing turn signal lights.

Synchronous mirror glass adjustment

If this function is activated when the driver's mirror glass is being adjusted, the passenger's mirror glass will also be adjusted.

Mirrors with memory

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

You can store the current setting of the exterior mirror glass in the driver's seat memory » page 65.

Folding the passenger's mirror glass when reversing

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

For better visibility when reversing, the passenger's mirror will fold down to the position stored in the driver's seat memory » page 65.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The mirror position is stored in memory.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The mirror control is in **R** position.

The mirror automatically returns to the default setting when the vehicle is driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance of vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of mirror damage!

› If the electrically foldable mirror is accidentally knocked out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible click.

Settings

Automatic folding of wing mirrors, synchronized setting of mirror glass and folding the passenger mirror when reversing can be activated or deactivated in the following way:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Mirrors* and activate or deactivate the feature.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the electric mirror glass control

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of getting burned!

› Do not touch the heated exterior mirror glass.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Use

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt if it is pulled suddenly. The belts lock, for example, during sudden braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled suddenly, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Belt tensioners on the front and rear seat belt retractors increase the safety of the **belted up** driver, the front passenger and the rear seat passengers wearing their seat belts.

During a collision of certain force, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner to prevent unwanted body movement.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **light** collisions or accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioners

Vehicles with Proactive Passenger Protection are equipped with reversible belt tensioners .

Reversible belt tensioners increase the safety of the belted driver and passenger by automatically pulling the seat belt towards the body and then releasing it in critical driving situations.

Belt tightening can also occur, for example, after the car starts moving or when driving slowly in a traffic jam.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminates or flashes – unfastened seat belt at the front or rear



The indicator lights show when the front and rear seats are occupied and when the seat belts are fastened.

- Green – seat occupied, seat belt fastened.
- Red – seat occupied, seat belt not fastened.
- White – seat not occupied

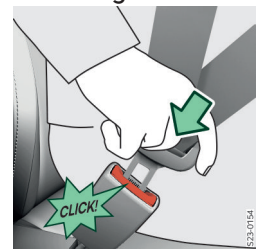
⚠ WARNING

Passengers may not be recognised by the system if they weigh less than 35 kg.

- Always check that passengers are wearing their seat belt correctly before driving.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



1. Hold the lock tongue and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
2. Insert the lock tongue into the buckle until there is an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to ensure that the lock tongue is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt



1. Hold the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
2. Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings

Raising



› Slide the turning loop up.

Lowering



1. Press the lock.
2. Slide the turning loop down.
3. After adjustment, check that the belt turning loop is properly secured and that the belt locks securely by pulling sharply on the belt.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



1. Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
2. Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
3. Pull on the strap to check if the retractor is working properly.
4. If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
5. If the strap is still blocked, seek help from a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

- When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.
- For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat in the front passenger seat

When using a child seat in the passenger seat, all country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

- Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, which is protected by an active airbag in front of the child.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:

A



B



A Sticker on the front passenger's sun visor

B Sticker on the centre pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat in the front passenger seat:

› When using a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag » *page 89*.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and another child seat that may be placed behind it.
› Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.
› Position the front passenger seat belt as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the child being transported!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› Activate the front passenger airbag when you are no longer using a rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat.

Applies to Taiwan.

In accordance with the legal regulations, toddlers, infants and children are not allowed to sit in the front seat. This is indicated by the following sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles, they are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the Škoda website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2–3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 129 regulation. The ECE-R 129 regulation classifies the child seats based on the child ´s height.

Group	Weight of the child	Hight of the child	Age of the child
0	up to 10 kg	40–83 cm	0–15 months
0+	up to 13 kg	40–87 cm	0–24 months
1	9–18 kg	45–105 cm	0–4 years
		76–105 cm	15 months – 4 years
2	15–25 kg	100–125 cm	3.5–7 years
3	22–36 kg	100–150 cm	3.5–12 years

Group 0/0+

Child car seats designed for rearward-facing transport from birth up to approximately 24 months of age, corresponding to a child's height of approximately 40–87 cm.

Group 0+/1

Child car seats designed for transport from birth to approximately 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 40–105 cm.

A child up to 76 cm tall must be transported with his/her back against the direction of travel.

Group 1

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 76–105 cm.

Group 1/2

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 76–125 cm.

Group 2
Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 100–125 cm.

Group 3
Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 12 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 100–150 cm. For transportation on a booster seat, the height of the child must be at least 125 cm.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats
Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX system

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag [b]	Without activated front airbag [b]
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	IL
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	IL

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

Category	Size category of child seat [a)]	Rear seats	
		Outer seats [b)]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IL	X

a) The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

b) The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

"IL" The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

"IUF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats permitted for use in this weight category.

"X" The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system retaining rings.

i-Size

Passenger seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

“i-UF” The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“i-U” The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“X” The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Category	Passenger seat	
	With activated front airbag [a)]	Without activated front airbag [a)]
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U
1 (9–18 kg)	UF	U
2 (15–25 kg)	UF	U
3 (22–36 kg)	UF	U

[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

Category	Rear seats	
	Outer seats	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	U	U

“U” The seat is suitable for child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight group.

“UF” The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal” category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

“X” The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter *» page 76, What you should be mindful of*.

ISOFIX

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The retaining rings for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.

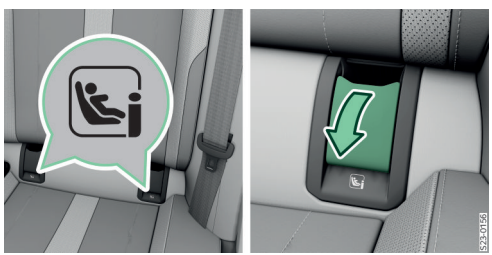
⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

ⓘ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a Škoda Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.



ISOFIX in the passenger seat



ISOFIX in the back seats

› Remove the protective caps before fitting the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats with the TOP TETHER system can only be used on seats equipped with mounting retaining rings with the TOP TETHER symbol.

› To mount the TOP TETHER system, only rings with the TOP TETHER symbol can be used.

› Only attach 1 belt of the child seat to the TOP TETHER mounting retaining ring.

› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object can be attached to the same TOP TETHER retaining ring.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the rear seats

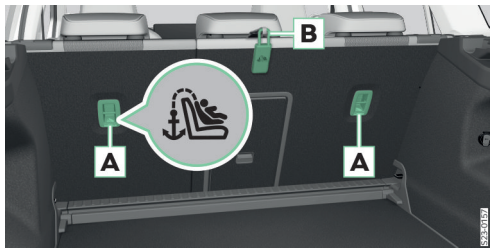
The TOP TETHER strap can be attached in two ways:

› Between the headrest guide bars

› Around the headrest guide bars



Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the back seats



Mounting retaining rings on the rear seats

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER strap can be attached between the headrest guide bars.



Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the passenger seat

Airbags

Use

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection to the seat belts during severe frontal and side collisions.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. It only provides protection when combined with a seat belt and only in this way does it provide maximum protection.

What you should be mindful of

The airbag system can only perform its protective function if all occupants are belted and properly seated.

In some situations, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated ***» page 89, Operation***.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not place your limbs in the airbag deployment area.
- No persons, animals or objects such as ***» page 87*** cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the front airbags!

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. This can prevent the front airbags from deploying.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive force, e.g. impacts, on the backrests.

› Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by Škoda.
› Any damage to seat covers at the side airbag location must be repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends using seat covers from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!
› The front armrest must be folded down or raised to one of the locked positions when driving.

Functionality

The inflated airbag absorbs the forward movement of the body reducing the risk of injury.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the airbags inflate. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

The airbags **will not deploy** in the following situations:

› Minor frontal and side collisions
› Rear-end collision

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

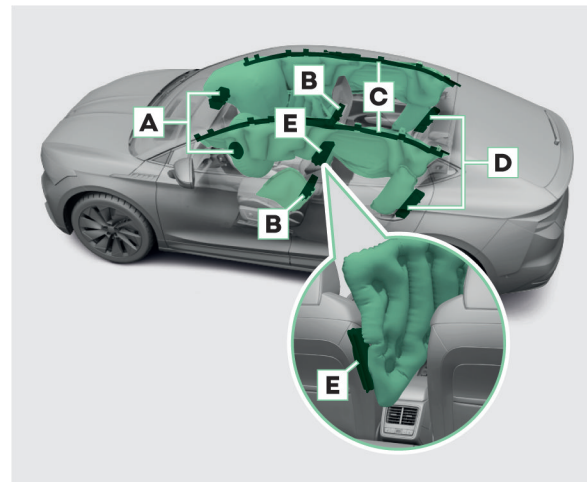
Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

If the airbags are deployed in an accident, the whole vehicle will be unlocked at the same time. Depending on the extent of the damage, you can lock the vehicle after an accident as follows:

1. Open the driver's door and close it again.
2. Lock the vehicle.

Overview

The location of airbags is marked **AIRBAG**.



A Front airbags

B Side airbags – front

C Head airbags

D Side airbags – rear

E Central airbag between the driver's seat and the passenger seat

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on to activate the airbags.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag *» page 89, Operation* should be deactivated by a Škoda Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

› With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.

› Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.

› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

› If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer about this.

Airbag or seat belt retractor deactivated by the diagnostic device

 illuminates for 4 s after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 s

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

 illuminated

Message indicating an airbag fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Passenger front airbag switch

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

› A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.

› The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of malfunction in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

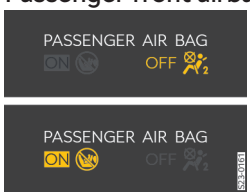
⚠ WARNING

Risk of unexpected activation of the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident!

› After deactivating the passenger airbag with the key part, do not leave the key part inserted in the switch while driving. Shocks may cause the key part to rotate in the notch and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Passenger front airbag status indication



Indicator light in the overhead panel

› When the ignition is switched on, both indicator lights will illuminate briefly.

› If the system is OK, they will both go out.

› One of the following indicator lights will then come on depending on the position of the switch:

OFF illuminated – passenger front airbag is deactivated

ON illuminates 65 seconds after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag is activated

Operation

Passenger front airbag switch is located on the side of the dashboard.

Before switching the passenger airbag off/on

› Remove the key part.

Switching passenger front airbag on/off



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the passenger door.
3. Insert the key part upwards into the notch in the switch.
4. To **switch off**, carefully turn the switch to the **OFF** position.

   To **switch on**, carefully turn the switch to the **ON** position.
5. Remove the key part from the notch.
6. Close the passenger door.
7. Switch on the ignition and check that the passenger's front airbag indicator lights are illuminated.

Troubleshooting

Passenger front airbag switch fault

illuminated in the instrument cluster together with OFF in the overhead panel

The passenger front airbag does not deploy in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, lights are functional when the ignition is switched on.

The automatic mode is always switched on after the ignition is switched on.

Automatic mode

When the automatic mode is switched on, the lights automatically adjust to the driving and ambient light conditions.

› Switching parking lights and low beam on/off automatically » page 92.
› Switching daytime running lights on/off automatically » page 92.

If the automatic mode is not switched on and the system determines that the lights need to be switched on, the indicator light ☼ in the instrument cluster will light up.

☼ illuminated

› Turn on the lights.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Automatic mode is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for correct lighting of your vehicle.
› Turn on the lights manually if the current lighting conditions require it.

Operation

Light switch



☼ Selecting the lights mode
› Press repeatedly the ☼ button.
Switching on/off the bad weather lights » page 94
Switching on/off the rear fog light » page 95

Light modes

› Automatic mode **AUTO**

AUTO illuminates in the switch. If the low beam is also switched on automatically, also illuminates in the light switch.

› Low beam mode

illuminates in the switch.

› Parking lights mode

illuminates in the switch.

› Switching the lights off **OFF**.

Information on the selected mode is briefly displayed on the instrument cluster screen.

If the car is travelling at a speed of more than 10 km/h or covers a distance of more than 100 m, the parking lights mode and switching the lights off mode are not available.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights*.
4. Select the item for setting the headlight range.
5. Use the slider to adjust the range of the lights. The range must correspond to the load of the car.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can also be used.

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Headlight range is set automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can result in poor road lighting or can dazzle other road users.
› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Headlight settings for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights* and set the feature *Travel mode:*.

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

The headlights meet the requirements for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction. No headlight adjustment is necessary.

Troubleshooting

Defective light bulb or LED light source

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears on the screen indicating a lighting fault.

› Replace the defective bulb.
› In case of a defective LED light source, contact a specialist garage for assistance.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Car lighting malfunction

If a message indicating a car lighting malfunction appears, the lights will work in emergency mode.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Daytime running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

ⓘ For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Automatic activation/deactivation

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Automatic activation of lights

Functionality

Switching lights on automatically in low light

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Automatic activation of lights is indicated by illuminating the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching lights on/off automatically in low light

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers have been switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic switching on headlights function is set in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and set the required functions.

Troubleshooting

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

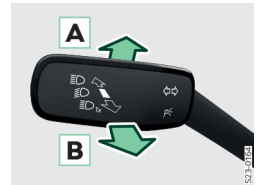
illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam headlights work when the headlights are switched on.



A Switching on high beam
B Switching off high beam / switching on headlight flasher

When the high beams or the headlight flasher is on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

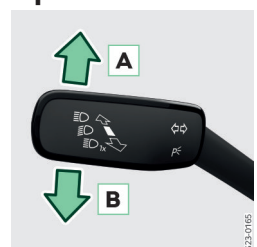
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on right turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel
B Switching on left turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

Turn signal – convenience turn signal

Convenience turn signal causes the turn signal lights to flash three times without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate or deactivate the *Convenience turn signal* feature.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster – right turn signal light defective

› Check the right signal light

flashes faster – left turn signal light defective

› Check the left signal light

Trailer turn signal light fault

does not blink when trailer is connected – trailer indicator turn signal fault

› Check the trailer lighting.

Lights for bad weather

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Bad weather lights are one of the light modes that help to improve road illumination in poor visibility conditions when standard lights lose their effectiveness.

Operation

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.



› Press the button for bad weather lights.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

The light is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ✓ Low beam is switched on.
- ✓ Driving speed is up to 110 km/h.

Rear fog light

Operation



› Press the rear fog light button.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the ⚠ button in the middle of the dashboard to switch them on/off.

The hazard warning lights may switch on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically during start-up or acceleration.

Switch on the hazard warning lights e.g. in the following situations:

› When traffic slows down suddenly or when you reach the end of a traffic queue.

› When the vehicle is stationary in traffic

› When towing

ⓘ When the hazard warning system is active and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights function

Use

Double parking light

The double parking light function switches on the sidelights when the vehicle is parked.

Single parking light

The single parking light function switches on the sidelights on one side when the vehicle is parked.

Operation

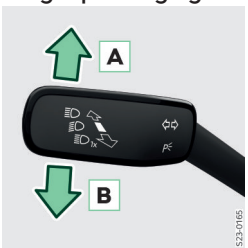
Double parking light

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the lights mode .
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The lights may switch off automatically if the 12V vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12V vehicle battery may discharge.

Single parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right.

B Switch on the sidelights on the left.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever to the appropriate position.
3. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

Headlights adaptive function

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The adaptive headlight function ensures that the light path is optimised to suit the current driving situation.

Operating conditions

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

Dynamic cornering light feature activation/deactivation

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic cornering light* feature.

The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions

Functionality

The Coming Home function turns on the light after the ignition is switched off. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The Leaving Home function switches on the light when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home functions include an animated switching the front mask off and on.

ⓘ If the vehicle is equipped with headlights with adaptive functions and keyless locking (KESSY) with automatic unlocking function activated, the lights will automatically switch on when the key is brought near the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Comfort lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Comfort lights* item and set the function.

When the engine is switched off, a menu appears on the Infotainment system screen where the Coming Home feature can be activated/deactivated.

In the *Comfort lights* item, you can set, for example, the animation of the rear lights or turn signals.

High beam Light Assist assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.
- ✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.

› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.

2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Light Assist* feature.

Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam mode is switched on, it adjusts the light trail to avoid dazzling drivers in oncoming traffic and in vehicles driving in front of you.

When driving in the dark on the motorway, it dims the light trail on the side of the dividing strip to avoid dazzling the drivers in oncoming traffic. These cars might not be recognized by the assistant because their headlights may be obscured by the dividing strip.

The assistant also provides better illumination of the cornering area.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- ✓ The driving speed is above 30 km/h (in some countries higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.

› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working. The system can also identify such a vehicle as a single-track vehicle.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Headlights* item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic Light Assist* feature.

Replacing light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

You may replace the following light bulbs yourself. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must have identical specifications to the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on its base.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of headlight damage due to ingress of water and dirt!

› Always fit the protective cap correctly on the headlight after changing a bulb.

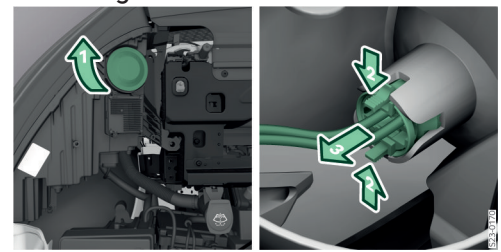
Conditions for replacing a light bulb

✓ Ignition off

✓ Lights off

Front turn signal

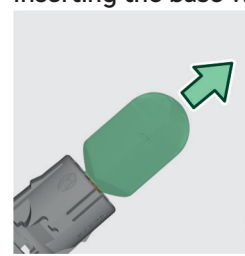
Removing the base with the bulb



Left headlight (top view)

1. Remove the protective cap from the headlight.
2. Press the connector locks and hold them.
3. Remove the base with the bulb.

Inserting the base with a new bulb



1. Replace the light bulb in the base.
2. Insert the base with the bulb holder into the headlamp until the locking lugs engage.
3. Refit the protective cap on the headlight.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is open
› Switching ignition off

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Lighting operation

Front and rear lights on/off

Deactivating automatic switch-on
(lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the respective light.

You can adjust the intensity of the light by holding your finger on it. The set intensity is not stored in the memory when the light is switched off.

Automatic switching the footwell lighting on/off

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

It also switches on automatically when the doors are opened, e.g. when getting in or out of the vehicle.

Switching on the make-up mirror illumination in the windscreen sun visors

› Slide off the make-up mirror cover.

Settings

Backlighting of the switches and instruments

The intensity of backlighting of switches and instruments can be set in one of the following ways:



1. Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

   A window will open with a slider for setting the backlight intensity.
2. Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Or:

1. Select the > > > *Interior* menu.
2. Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Footwell illumination

Applies to vehicles without background lighting.

1. Select the > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.

2. Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

ⓘ On vehicles equipped with background lighting, the footwell lighting is part of the interior background lighting *» page 101, Settings*.

Backlighting of the Infotainment screen and the central console illumination

Applies to vehicles without background lighting.

You can set the following functions in the Infotainment system:

› The colour of the Infotainment screen backlight:
  › Automatically, based on the selected driving mode.
  › Manually, using the slider
› The intensity of the central console illumination

1. Select the > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the item for interior lighting and set the required function.

Interior background lighting

Use

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

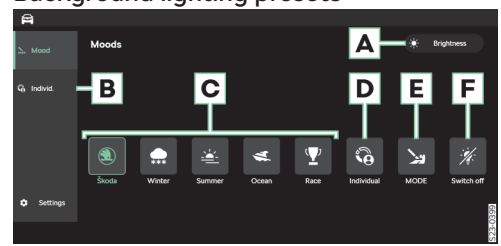
The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

When the vehicle is locked, the lights will briefly turn red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the illumination will briefly turn green. When certain doors are opened, the illumination in these doors will turn red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

You can set the background lighting in the Infotainment system menu > .

Background lighting presets



A Adjusting the overall lighting intensity

B Setting the colours and intensity of the lighting for the user preset

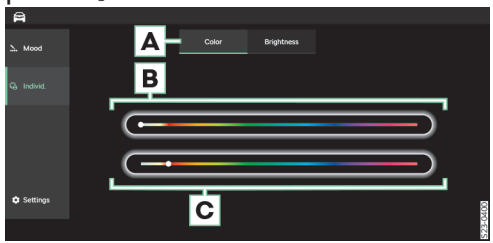
C Factory presets

D User preset

E Automatic preset
  › The colour and intensity of the lighting automatically change depending on the selected driving mode of the car.

F Switching off the lighting

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset

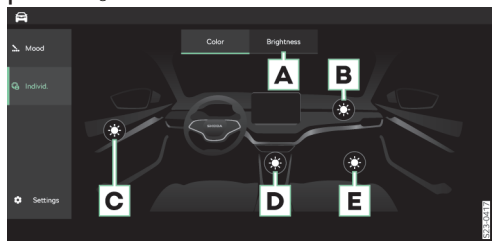


- **A** Tab for setting the lighting colours
- **B** Slider for setting the dashboard and door lighting colour
- **C** Slider for setting the central column lighting colour

Set-up procedure:

1. Select the user preset.
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting colours.
3. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting colour.

Setting the brightness of the lighting for the user preset



- **A** The tab for setting the lighting intensity.
- **B** Dashboard
- **C** Doors
- **D** Centre console
- **E** Footwell

Set-up procedure:

1. Select the user preset.
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting intensity.
3. Select the area, for which you want to set the lighting intensity.
4. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting intensity.

Wipers and washers

Operating conditions

✓ Bonnet closed

✓ Boot lid closed
✓ Ignition on

Operation

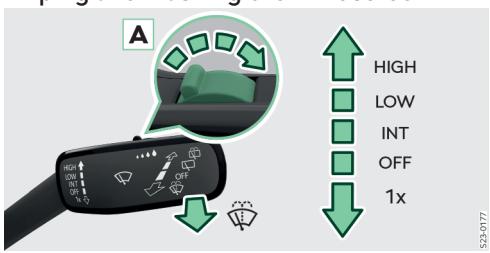
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen!
› Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry.

Wiping and washing the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending on vehicle equipment:
› Intermittent wiping
› Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the **INT** position

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

ⓘ If you open the driver's or passenger's door when the car is stationary with the wipers on, the wiping will be interrupted. If you close the door or move the wiper lever within a few seconds, wiping will resume.

Headlamps washers

The illuminated headlamps are washed the first time and every tenth time the windscreen is washed. You can have the frequency of the headlight washes adjusted by a specialist garage.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

You can activate or deactivate the automatic rain wiper function in the Infotainment system as follows:

1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the climatic conditions.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the washer

› Do not remove the strainer from the neck of the tank when refilling the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights

› Use a fluid that does not harm polycarbonate.

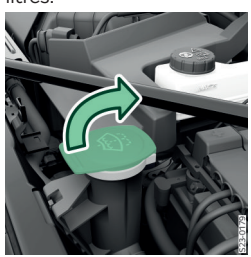
NOTICE

Risk of damage to the area under the bonnet!

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the space under the bonnet » page 24.

The tank capacity is 3 litres, in cars with headlight washers it is 6 litres.



1. Open the bonnet » page 269.
2. Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
3. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
4. Close the tank sealing cap.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid too low

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Wipers fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully detach frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and remove any snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

Folding the wipers away from the windscreen

In order to fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen, it must first be set into the service position.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the front flap!

› Close the front flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.



1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. Push the control lever down within 10 seconds, and hold it for approximately 2 seconds.

Or:

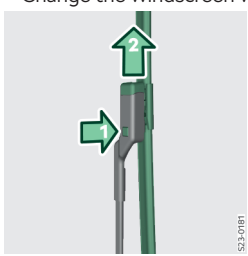
1. Select the > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers* and then wiper service position.

Replacing a wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.



1. Press the safety catch and hold it.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Insert the new wiper blade in until it clicks into place.

Folding the wipers back



1. Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Heating and air conditioning

The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› It is recommended to use the automatic mode with a set interior temperature of 22 °C to reliably and efficiently achieve the desired conditions in the car interior.
› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Refrigerant in the air conditioning system

The information about refrigerant can be found on the label in the engine compartment at the front.

⚠ Warning: air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
The refrigerant is flammable.
Air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
Specifications and quantity of refrigerant
Lubricating oil specification

Information about the refrigerant used

Refrigerant designation	Refrigerant weight	CO_2 equivalent	Global Warming Potential (GWP)
R1234yf [a)]	0.460 kg	0.0002 t	0.501
R744 [b)]	0.470 kg	0.0005 t	1

a) Applies to vehicles without a heat pump.
b) Applies to vehicles without a heat pump.

The R1234yf refrigerant in the air conditioning system of vehicles without the heat pump contains fluorinated greenhouse gases.

The fluorinated greenhouse gases are contained in a hermetically sealed device. Installed electrical components have a leakage rate of less than 0,1 % per year.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!
The R1234yf refrigerant in the air conditioning system of vehicles without the heat pump is flammable and can explode when heated. It can produce poisonous gases on contact with hot surfaces.

› Have the air conditioning system serviced only by qualified service technicians trained to the required standard, e.g. SAE J2845.
› Keep the vehicle well away from sources of open flames or sparks.

Functionality

Automatic mode

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature and prevents fogging of the windows.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Air Care

This applies to certain countries

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the interior of the car. It also recirculates and cleans the air.

Doors and windows must be closed to ensure proper operation.

1. To switch on/off this function, press CLIMA under the Infotainment screen.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Activation of the function is indicated by the green colour of the button.

Deactivation of the function is indicated by the white colour of the button.

After the function has been deactivated, the button remains green for a certain period of time.

“Heating” function

The function allows you to simultaneously switch on the heating of some of the following features:

› Windscreen
› Rear window
› Steering wheel
› Seats

1. To switch on/off this function, press CLIMA under the Infotainment screen.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Heating of selected items of the function can be activated/deactivated in the menu Other air conditioning settings » *page 108*.

Cooling system operating conditions

- ✓ External temperature above 2 °C
- ✓ Fan switched on
- ✓ Ignition on

Or:

Driver's seat occupied

Settings

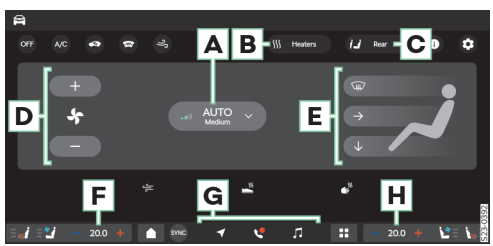
› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap ⁘ > .

Or:

› Tap in the preferred applications.



A Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power

B Switching the “Heating” function on

C Rear settings screen

D Setting the fan speed

E Setting the direction of the air outlet

F Temperature setting for the left-hand side

G Option to set air conditioning to your favourite applications » *page 122, Operation*

H Temperature setting for the right-hand side

Information on air conditioning

Other air conditioning settings

OFF Switching the air conditioning system on/off

Switching the windscreen heating on/off » *page 112, Operation*

Warm air flow to footwell preset

Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating

Outdoor air flow to interior preset

SYNC Switching on/off interior temperature maintenance according to the driver's temperature setting (displayed when the temperature on the driver's side changes)

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the Air Care on/off *(This applies to certain countries)*

Switching the seat heating on/off » *page 113*

Switching the seat ventilation on/off » page 113

Additional information

During charging with alternating current (AC), the air conditioning does not work.
If you want to cool or heat the interior of the vehicle during charging, activate the Instant air conditioning function » page 111.

To start the preselect option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

When switched on, the air conditioning will start as set before switching off.

Switching off the preset also switches off the steering wheel heating. This applies even if the steering wheel heater was manually switched on before the preset was activated.

The selected preset is switched on for a limited period of time.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment screen:

LO Maximum cooling power

HI Maximum heating power

Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the screen at the back of the centre console.

Air conditioning system can also be set in the MyŠkoda application » page 177, Functionality.

Setting the temperature on the touch bar under the Infotainment system screen

Adjust the temperature by swiping two fingers on the touch bar.

› To switch between the driver and passenger sides, double-tap with two fingers on the touch panel.

To set the temperature on the touch bar, the air conditioning settings menu must be displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

Other air conditioning settings

› Tap the button in the air conditioning settings menu.

The following menu will appear:

› Activation/deactivation of selected items of the “Heating” function (depending on vehicle equipment):
  › Seats
  › Steering wheel
  › Windscreen
  › Rear window
› Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):
  › Automatic switching on of seat heating and ventilation
  › Automatic switching on of the steering wheel heating

If this function is activated, the heating/ventilation will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats or steering wheel and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

Air conditioning economy mode

If a seat is not occupied, Climatronic will adjust the air temperature for that seat to reduce energy consumption.

The Infotainment system screen shows Eco.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switching on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

High concentration of CO_2

Applies to vehicles with a heat pump.



illuminated
High CO_2 concentration report

⚠ DANGER

Risk of accident!
High CO_2 concentrations cause sudden loss of consciousness and suffocation.

› Open all windows immediately!

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

High concentration of CO_2

Applies to vehicles with a heat pump.



illuminated
High CO_2 concentration report

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Increased CO_2 concentrations can cause nausea, fatigue and loss of attention for the driver and passengers.

› Open all windows!

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ If the sensor detects an increased or high concentration of CO_2 in the interior of the vehicle:

› The fan speed is automatically increased.

› In a vehicle with the ignition switched off, the fan will automatically switch on

Fault in the CO_2 concentration sensor.

Applies to vehicles with a heat pump.



illuminated
Report *Air conditioning is not working properly. Seek a specialist garage.*

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Independent air conditioning

Use

Independent air-conditioning cools, ventilates or heats the interior of a stationary car based on the desired temperature set for the time of departure.

Functionality

Sources for independent air conditioning operation

› Current from a high voltage battery

› Current from a charging station or an electrical outlet

Operation using current from a high-voltage battery

When the vehicle is not being charged, the source for independent air conditioning operation is the current from the high-voltage battery.

When independent air conditioning is on and the vehicle is not being charged, the expected range is reduced.

Operation using current from a charging station or an electrical outlet

When charging with alternating current (AC), the high-voltage battery is charged first before air conditioning begins.

If the instant air conditioning is switched on when charging with alternating current (AC), the car is air-conditioned during charging.

When charging with direct current (DC), the vehicle is air conditioned during charging. When charging is complete, the air conditioning will stop or continue with the current from the high-voltage battery.

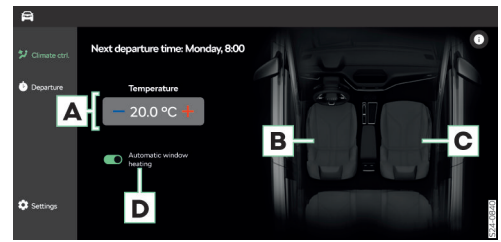
If the car is charging while the independent air conditioning is on, the charging power will be reduced.

Conditions

✓ The minimum charge level of the high-voltage battery is 20%.

Settings

› Press > > on the Infotainment system screen.



A Setting the desired temperature

B Switching the driver's seat and steering wheel heating on/off (depending on vehicle equipment)

C Switching the passenger's seat heating on/off (depending on vehicle equipment)

D Switching on/off automatic windscreen and rear window heating (depending on vehicle equipment)

Displaying the Presets list, preset activation/deactivation

Further independent air conditioning settings

› Rear window, windscreen and wing mirrors heating (depending on vehicle equipment)

Preset setting, activation/deactivation

1. Tap in the independent air conditioning setting menu.
2. Tap > for the preset that you want to set.

   You can set or enable the following items from the displayed preset:

   › Departure time
   › Day/days of the week
   › Repeat on the selected day/days of the week
3. Activate/deactivate the selected preset.

Automatic activation

The independent air conditioning will switch on automatically based on the set temperature and activated preset.

Automatic deactivation

The independent air conditioning will switch off automatically if one of the following occurs:

› Approximately 15 minutes after the scheduled departure time
› When the high-voltage battery charge is low

Instant air conditioning

Instant air conditioning is used to maintain the temperature in the interior during short-term departure from the vehicle.

It is recommended that you save the Instant Air Conditioning function to your preferred functions.

Activate the function in one of the following ways:

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Tap in the menu that appears in the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Tap in the preferred functions.

The function is activated for 30 minutes.

Independent auxiliary air conditioning can also be set in My-Škoda » page 176 application.

Windows heating

Use

Window heating is used to defrost or defog the glass.

Conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Outside temperature is below approx. 35 °C

Operation

Rear window heating

› Press the REAR button under the Infotainment system.

Windscreen heating

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.
2. Tap on the Infotainment system display.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after a certain period.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and switched on again within about 10 minutes, heating continues.

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heater will automatically switch on if there is a risk of the windscreen fogging up.

The windscreen defogging/defrosting mode

› Press the MAX button under the Infotainment system.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  › The seat is not occupied.
  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Conditions

✓ Ignition on

Or:

✓ Driver's seat occupied

Operation

Depending on vehicle, the front seats can be heated, or heated and ventilated. Rear outer seats can only be heated.

› To heat the front seats, press or on the Infotainment system screen.

› To ventilate the front seats, press or on the Infotainment system screen.

› To heat the rear seats, press the button, or on the rear centre console.

Heating/ventilation will switch on at the maximum intensity. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating/ventilation intensity until it switches off.

Heating/ventilation intensity indicator

The heating/ventilation intensity is indicated by the number of indicator lights on:

› On the Infotainment system screen

› In the button on the centre console at the back (applies to rear seats)

If the engine is switched off when the heating/ventilation is running, and it is restarted again within about 10 minutes, the front seat heating/ventilation will continue as set before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Setting automatic switching on of front seats heating / ventilation

If this function is activated, the seat heating/ventilation will switch on depending on the outside temperature and the seat temperature.

1. To activate/deactivate the function, press > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the seat heating/ventilation level in the menu *Switch on at start of journey depending on temperature*.

Blocking the increase in rear seat heating intensity

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment screen.
2. Press *Rear* > REAR on the Infotainment system screen.

If the function is switched on, the heating intensity can only be reduced.

ⓘ The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Steering wheel heating

Conditions

✓ Ignition on

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

ⓘ By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off, or switched on at the intensity that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Digital cockpit

Overview



A Screen area with selected information:
- Time
- Indicator lights
- Reports and information
- Outside temperature

❄ – low outside temperature

B Display area for assistance systems

C Display area for driving data/navigation

D Display area with selected information:
- Speed
- Indicator lights
- Set level of recuperation
- Set mode of automatic gearbox selector
- High-voltage battery charge status
- Range » page 243
- Driving performance availability indicator » page 243

E Display area for indicator lights

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
- When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.
- Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
- Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.
- Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

When you move the selector lever, the screen shows a diagram and an instruction to select the automatic gearbox mode.

Operation

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



- Expanding the assist systems display area on the left-hand side of the display
  To return to the default display, press ▷.
- ▷ Switching/expanding the driving data and navigation display area on the right-hand side of the display
  To return to the default display, press ◁.

Settings

Setting the language

On the Infotainment system in ⁘ > 🔕.

Setting the time

On the Infotainment system in ⁘ > 🔕.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the Infotainment system menu 🚗 > 🚙 > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*.

Head-up display with augmented reality

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

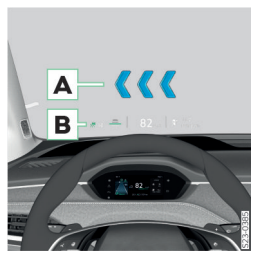
Risk of screen damage

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

Overview

The Head-up display projects the selected information onto the windscreen in the driver's field of vision.



A Far display area with information projected directly onto objects in the driver's field of view
Information from the assistance systems and navigation is projected.

B Near display area with selected information:
› Speed

› Navigation
› Assist systems

Operation

Head-up display operation via the multifunction steering wheel



› To turn off/on the far area, long press the ◁ or ▷ button.

Restrictions

The function may be limited or unavailable in strong sunlight.

ⓘ Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings

› Select the > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.

The following items can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Deactivating/activating the Head-up display
› Activating/deactivating the parts of display with information projected directly onto objects in the driver's field of view
› Position and demo mode
› Brightness
› Colour scheme
› Selecting the projected information

Driving data

Overview

The following data is displayed on the Infotainment system screen:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

From the start

› Driving data from the time when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

› Driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 h and 59 min. driving time or 9,999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From charging
› Driving data from the last charging is stored in the memory. The next charging will reset the memory.

Operation

Displaying and resetting the driving data memory on the instrument cluster screen via the multifunction steering wheel



- **Pressing** – displaying the driving data menu

A **Pressing** – switching the driving data memory

Holding – resetting the driving data memory

Displaying driving data in the Infotainment system

In the > > menu.

Selecting the Infotainment system memory

In the > > menu.

› Select the required memory type.

Resetting the Infotainment system memory

1. Select > > > *Interior* > *Driving data*.
2. Reset the selected memory.

Or:

1. Select > > .
2. Pressing the **0.0** resets the relevant memory.

ⓘ Resetting the long-term memory also clears (resets) the range calculation data.

Settings

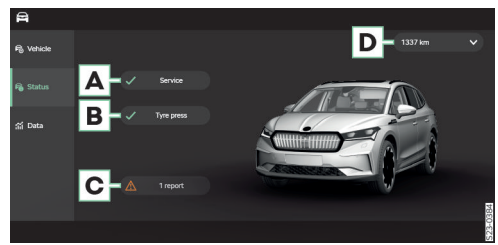
Setting units

On the Infotainment system in > .

Vehicle status

Overview

The vehicle status can be displayed in the following menu of the Infotainment system > > .



A Service dates and vehicle identification number (VIN)

B Tyre pressure check

C Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number

D Total distance travelled

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages indicating the fault are displayed on the instrument cluster screen when the ignition is switched on.

Fault messages can also be displayed in the Infotainment system.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (serious hazard) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

Getting to know the Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview

Overview



A Touchscreen

B Touch bar for the Infotainment system functions control:
- › Setting the sound volume
- › Zooming in/out the map in navigation
- › Setting the interior temperature

⏻ Depending on the status:
- › **The Infotainment system off**
  - › **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on
- › **The Infotainment system on**
  - › **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off
  - › **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

HOME menu

Use

HOME menu is used to quickly start up preferred functions.

Buttons with functions can be configured and rearranged.

› To display the HOME menu, tap the ⌂ button on the Infotainment system display.

Settings

Displaying the next page

› Press the display and drag left or right.

Changing a preferred menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap to highlight the tile you want to change.
3. In the function list, tap the function you want to place in the highlighted tile.

   Only functions that can be placed in the highlighted tile are displayed in the list.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Adding a page in the HOME menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap ✚.

   HOME menu can have a maximum of 5 pages.
3. Select the desired page layout.
4. Tap the *OK* button to confirm.
5. Tap the *Finish* button.

Removing a page in the HOME menu

1. Hold your finger on any of the main menu tiles.
2. Tap the *Delete page* button.
3. Tap the *OK* button to confirm.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Preferred functions

Operation

In the left top part of the Infotainment system screen, there is a bar of favourite functions. Here, you can set up as many as 5 favourite functions or menus.

Adding a preferred function

1. Hold the finger on any of your favourite functions in the Favourite functions bar.

   Or:

   Tap ✚ in the Favourite functions bar.
2. Tap to highlight the position in the favourite functions bar where you want to place the desired function.
3. In the list of available functions, tap the desired function that you want to place in the highlighted position in the bar of favourite functions.
4. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Removing a preferred function

1. In the favourite functions bar, hold your finger on the function you want to remove.
2. Tap ⋮ > 🗑.
3. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Favourite applications

Operation

In the middle of the lower part of the Infotainment system screen, there is a bar of favourite applications. You can move up to 4 applications from the **Applications** menu here.

Adding a preferred application

1. Tap ⁘ > *Edit*.

   Or:

   Hold the finger on any of your favourite applications in the Favourite applications bar.
2. Drag the desired application from the **Applications** menu to the favourite applications bar.
3. Tap the ✓ to finish.

Removing a preferred application

1. Tap ⁘ > *Edit*.

   Or:

   Hold the finger on any of your favourite applications in the Favourite applications bar.
2. Drag the desired application from the favourite applications bar to the **Applications** menu.
3. Tap the ✓ to finish.

Main menu

Use

The main menu shows the available vehicle settings and functions.

The main menu can be displayed by tapping 🚗 on the Infotainment system screen.

Settings

The layout of the buttons in the main menu can be customised as follows:

1. To activate edit mode, hold down any button.
2. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
3. Move the button to a different position.
4. Tap the *Finish* button to finish.

Applications menu

Use

The Applications menu displays the Infotainment system applications and functions.

The applications menu can be displayed by tapping ⁘ on the Infotainment system screen.

Settings

The layout of the buttons in the Applications menu can be customised as follows:

1. Press the *Edit* button.

2. Move the button to a different position.

   Or:

   Drag the button from the favourite applications bar to the desired location in the Applications menu.
3. Tap ✓.

Logout screen

Use

The logout screen appears before you leave the vehicle, allowing you to activate the selected functions.

ⓘ The items of the selected functions depend on the vehicle equipment and can only be displayed under certain conditions.

Settings

Set the display of selected feature items on the logout screen as follows:

1. On the logout screen, press ✎.
2. Add or remove the desired items.

   Drag an added item up or down to change its order.
3. Press ✎ to confirm your changes.

ⓘ If a system update is available, the item to install it will always appear first.

Configuration assistant

Functionality

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on and after the Infotainment system is switched on, it is necessary to carry out configuration.

› For manual display tap ⁘ > ⚙ > ☰ > *Configuration wizard*.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Settings

Setting basic functions

The following basic Infotainment functions are set in the menu > > :

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap > > .
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

After restoring the factory settings, Škoda Connect services will no longer be active. To activate them, you must restart the Infotainment system and reactivate the services.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determining system version

› Tap > > > *System Information*.

System update

If there are available Škoda Connect services, you can update the system by using the Over-the-Air update » page 183.

If Škoda Connect services are not available, you will be contacted by a Škoda Service Partner, if there is an update available.

Sound

Settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the > menu.

For example, the following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  › Volume adjustment of voice commands
  › Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  › Speed-dependent volume
  › Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation

› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

ⓘ The sound volume can be controlled by moving one finger on the touch bar below the Infotainment system screen.

The Infotainment system controls

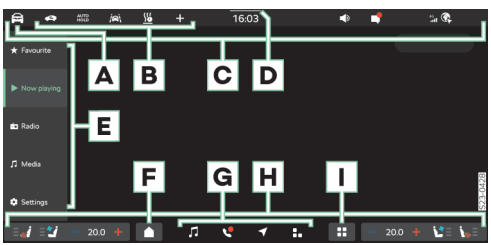
Display controls

What you should be mindful of

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Overview



A Displaying the main menu

B Preferred functions

C Top bar of the Infotainment system screen

D Displaying the Infotainment system control centre

E Bar with buttons of the displayed menu

F Displaying HOME menu

G Favourite applications

H Lower bar of the Infotainment system screen

I Displaying the Applications menu

Operation

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

For help with gesture control, see the instructions in the Infotainment.

Displaying control help

› Tap > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions can be set in the menu > > *Display*:

› Display background image

› Confirmation tones

Keypad

Overview

The layout of the keypad characters depends on the currently set keypad language and the set Infotainment language.

Keypad types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Input keypad
› Search keypad

Operation

The Infotainment system keypad can be used to enter characters, letters and digits.

The keypad is displayed automatically when the Infotainment system prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

You can enter search terms including diacritical characters.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› To use, press repeatedly on the keypad until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Hold the symbol to display other variants of the symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Settings

Additional keypad languages can be set in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Additional keypad languages*.
2. Select the desired languages.

Control centre

Use

The Infotainment control centre provides quick access to preferred functions.

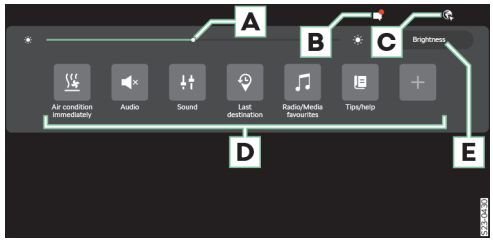
Overview

Displaying the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Control centre



- **A** Setting the instrument and key illumination
- **B** Displaying the notification list
- **C** Setting maximum privacy mode
- **D** Preferred functions
- **E** Displaying Head-up display brightness settings and display/ switch illumination

Closing the control centre

› Tap the bar at the bottom of the control centre and drag it up.

Or:

› Tap the Infotainment system screen outside the control centre

Settings

The preferred functions buttons can be set in the following way:

1. Display the control centre.
2. Tap an empty button with the **+** symbol or hold your finger on an occupied button.
3. To add a favourite function, tap to mark the desired position and then tap the button of the desired function.

   Or:

   To delete a favourite function, tap to mark the desired position and then tap ⋮ > 🗑.
4. Tap the *Finish* button.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Vice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

The dialogue can be interrupted at any time and a new command can be given. There is no need to wait for the response to complete.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition of voice and control of other vehicle functions, e.g. searching for special destinations.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

For answering more complex questions, online voice control can use the artificial intelligence features based on ChatGPT from OpenAI (**https://openai.com**). In this case, the system will indicate this fact in the response. Voice commands are always the responsibility of the user, who must ensure that this does not violate legislation or the rights of third parties. The ChatGPT may be incorrect, inaccurate, incomplete or offensive and the user should always verify the veracity of the output and the appropriateness of its use.

Extended online voice control

Enhanced online voice control of the vehicle extends the functionality to search for navigation and POI online using the vehicle's current GPS position. This option will refine the relevance of the search results speeding up the system's response and allowing you to control other online functions.

Laura newsfeed

Laura newsfeed provides useful tips, suggestions, and warnings based on your driving habits. These tips, suggestions, and warnings appear in the Laura application and Laura in the HOME menu.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions

In order to use the voice control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated in the vehicle.

Extended Voice Control – conditions

In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ Access to the current GPS position of the car is granted.
- ✓ The *Send location data* is activated in the vehicle.

ⓘ You give your consent during the registration of the Škoda Connect services or in the MyŠkoda mobile application.

Operation

Switching voice control on

› Press 🎤 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"*OK Laura*"** or a customised saved activation command.

The 🔍 symbol will appear after activation.

Entering a voice command

› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The 🔍 symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The 🔊 symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

You can speed up voice control as follows:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.
› Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot". If this procedure is unsuccessful, try using different words in the wording of the command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control

A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Tap , when Laura is waiting for a voice command.
› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Terminating the voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** while a voice command is being entered.

Restrictions

Voice control is not available for some Infotainment languages. The Infotainment system will alert you to this when you set the language.

For some Infotainment system languages, voice control is only available in a limited mode. For more information, tap in the Laura application.

The directional microphone only obeys the voice commands of the user who has woken up the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

The voice control cannot be used during an ongoing telephone call.

Settings

Voice control is set up in Laura application.

Displaying the Laura application

› Tap > .

Or:

› Tap in the preferred applications.

Activation customisation by voice

› Tap in Laura application.

The following functions can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Activating the voice assistant by voice
› Enable/disable the default activation command
› Create your own activation command

Voice assistant settings

› Tap ⚙ in Laura application.

Or:

› Tap ⠿ > 🔇 > ⚙ > *Voice assistant*.

The following options can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Categories of Laura newsfeed function
› Dialogue tone
› Voice assistant volume and voice

Giving/revoking consent to the voice assistant to access the current GPS position of the vehicle

› In Laura application tap 💬 > *Basic functions*.

ⓘ Consent can also be set in MyŠkoda application.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"*Help*"**.

The **"*Help*"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying control help

› Tap 💬 in Laura application.

Or:

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"*tutorial*"**.

Radio

FM radio

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⁘ > ♫.

Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

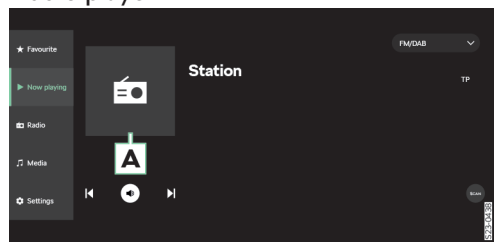
Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

› Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.

Audio player



A Station logo

⏮ Switch to previous available station

⏭ Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

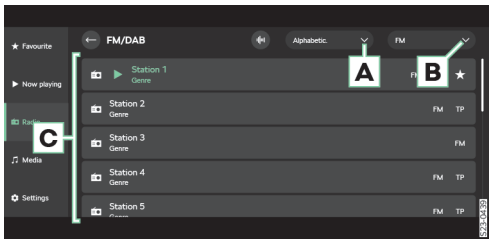
🔉 Switch sound off

🔇 Switch sound on

⌄ Selecting a frequency range

View the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Select the desired FMband.



A List sorting option

B Selecting a frequency range

After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List of available stations

← Displaying the available frequency ranges

After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

Finding stations manually

The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ › +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ › .
2. To delete one preset, tap on the preset.

   Or:

   To delete all presets, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

The Scan function

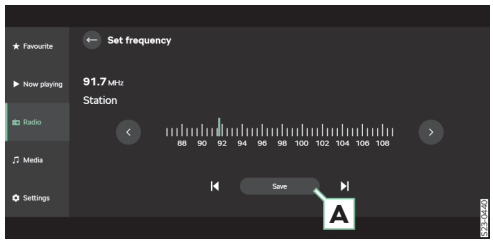
The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

1. Display the radio player.
2. To start playback, tap SCAN.
3. To stop playback, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

1. View the list of available stations.
2. Tap .

For FM stations, the button is available only if the *FM* option is selected in the **Radio/media** application in the band selection › .



⏮ Scroll to previous available station

⏭ Scroll to next available station

< / > Step-by-step search

A Saving the currently tuned station to the preferred station presets

To search, you can use the frequency range scale.

› Press the pointer and move it to the desired position.

Keys ⏮ / ⏭

To set the mode of switching between stations using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear window for receiving radio signals.

Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Switching receiving Traffic Programme (TP) on/off

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Switching the RDS on/off

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the RDS function is off, the following items will not be available when setting FM stations:

› Traffic programme (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switching radio text reception on/off

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Radio text*.

Advanced setting

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

When the function is activated and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the Infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *RDS regional:*.
2. Select one of the following menu items:
   - › *Fixed* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
   - › *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

🛈 If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Adding station logos

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired station.

   Or:

   Tap ✎ > 🖼 the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

🛈 To turn off the logo display, tap 📻 in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Automatically select station logo*.

Regional FM station logo

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Station region logo*.

DAB radio

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⠿ > ♫.

Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

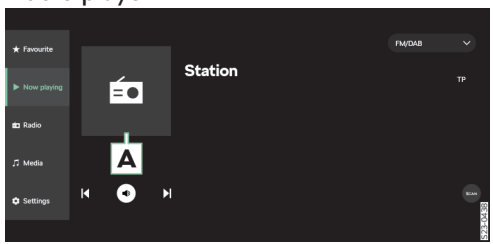
Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

› Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.

Audio player



A Station logo

⏮ Switch to previous available station

⏭ Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

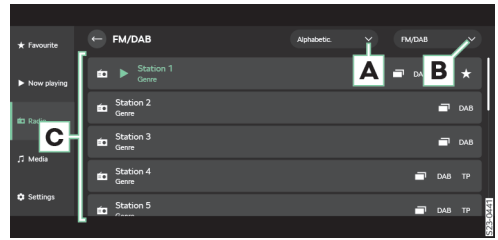
🔊 Switch sound off

🔇 Switch sound on

⌄ Selecting a frequency range

View the list of available stations

1. Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Select the desired DABband.



A List sorting option

B Selecting a frequency range

After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List of available stations

← Displaying the available frequency ranges

After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.

🛈 The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ › +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ › .
2. To delete one preset, tap on the preset.

   Or:

   To delete all presets, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

1. Display the radio player.
2. To start playback, tap SCAN.
3. To stop playback, tap SCAN.

Keys ⏮ / ⏭

To set the mode of switching between stations using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear window for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

Settings

Switching receiving Traffic Programme (TP) on/off

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Switching DAB stations additional announcements on/off

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Switching radio text reception on/off

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > *Radio* > *Radio text*.

Advanced setting

Switching on/off automatic retuning to a similar DAB station

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically retunes to another DAB station with a similar content.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switch to a similar station if reception is poor*.

Adding station logos

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired station.

   Or:

   Tap ✎ > 🖼 the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap 📻 in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Automatically select station logo*.

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Also show DAB image gallery and information*.

WEB radio and podcasts

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⠿ > ♫.

Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

Display stations menu

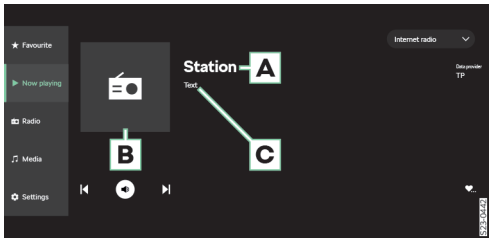
› Tap 📻 in the **Radio/media** menu.

Web radio player

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap 📻 > ⌄ > *Web radio*.
2. Select the web station from the display lists.

   Or:

   Tap 🔍 to search a web radio station.
3. Tap ▶ in the menu on the left.



A Station name

B Station logo

C Broadcast content information

Switch to previous available station

Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

Switch sound off

Switch sound on

Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

If the grey symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

Podcast player

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap > > *Web radio*.
2. Select the podcast from the display lists.

   Or:

   Tap to search podcasts.
3. Tap ▶ in the menu on the left.

The podcasts are marked with the symbol in the displayed lists.



A Podcast name

B Podcast logo

C Broadcast content information

▶ Starting playback

Pausing

Switch to previous available station

Switch to next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

15 Rewind 15 seconds back

15 Fast forward 15 seconds

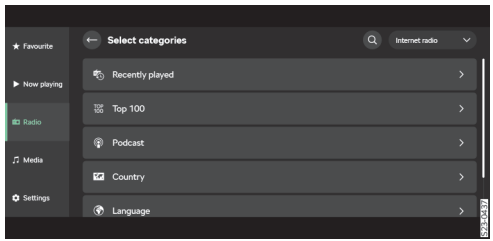
Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

View episodes from the podcast being played

If the grey symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap > > *Web radio*.



Searching for web radio stations and podcasts

Web radio stations and podcasts last listened to

Top 100 favourite radio stations based in the Infotainment system language setting

Searching and selecting podcasts

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the country

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the language

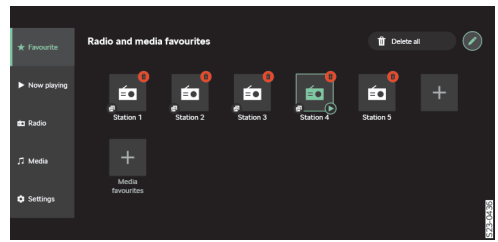
Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the content

The podcasts are marked with the symbol in the displayed lists.

Preset radio stations and podcasts

You can store stations from all available frequency ranges, web radios and podcasts in the presets.

› Tap ★ in the **Radio/media** menu.



Storing the currently playing station or podcast

Switching the edit mode on/off

› *Delete all* – deleting all preferred station and media presets

› – deleting the desired preset

› – changing logo

Changing the position of saved presets

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired preset, until it is released.
3. Move the preset to a different position.

Conditions

✓ The vehicle has an active data licence.

You can extend the data licence after the expiry date from the Shop The Infotainment system menu.

Operation

Storing the current station to the preferred stations preset

› In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > +.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. Tap in the **Radio/media** menu.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ★ > ✎.
2. To delete one preset, tap on the preset.

   Or:

   To delete all presets, tap 🗑 *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Keys ⏮ / ⏭

To set the mode of switching between stations using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or between all stations.

Restrictions

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

Settings

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

1. To set the sound quality, **Radio/media** application, tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Audio quality online:*.
2. Select high or low quality.

The quality setting affects the volume of data consumed by the data link.

The quality is also affected by the speed and availability of the data connection.

ⓘ If playback drop-outs occur, reduce the audio quality.

Media

Audio player

Overview

Display the Radio/media application

› Tap ⁘ > ♫.

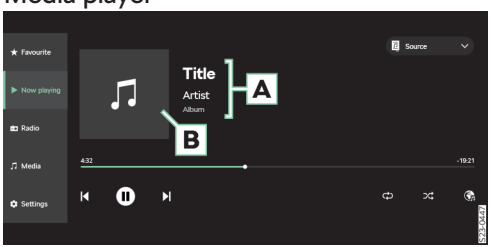
Or:

› Tap ♫ in the preferred applications.

Display the player

› Tap ▶ in the **Radio/media** menu.

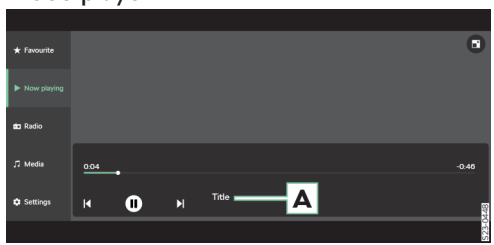
Media player



A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B The album image

Video player



A Name of the track being played

⬔ Stretching the image

⬔ Downloading an image

Operation

Operation – basics

▶ Starting playback

⏸ Pausing

⏮ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

⏮ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

⏮ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

⏭ Tapping: playing the next track

⏭ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

ⓘ You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

🔂 Turn on/off repeat playback of the current track

🔁 Turn on/off repeat playback of the current album/folder

🔀 Turn on/off random playback of the current album/folder

Saving the track you are playing to "*My playlist*"

Managing "My playlist"

1. Tap ♫.
2. Tap repeatedly ← until the media list of the current source is displayed.
3. Tap ♫ > > ✎.

You can do the following in playlist management:

› Change the order of a track in the list by dragging it to the desired position

› Delete titles by pressing 🗑

Restrictions

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Traffic program

› To switch on/off receiving traffic news during playback of media files, tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Traffic program (TP)* in the **Radio/media** menu.

File management

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

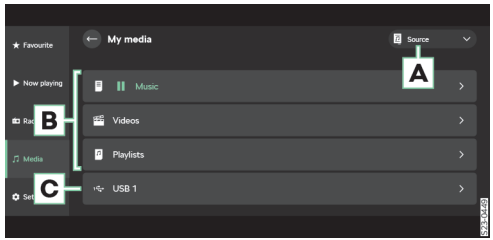
› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.

› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Media list



A Selecting a source

B Multimedia database organized into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected devices

← Displaying available resources

Favourite media

You can store the media currently playing in your preferred presets.

Depending on the available information, you can save the title, album, artist name or assigned genre of the title.

› To display, tap ★ in the **Radio/media** application.

Operation

Manage favourite media

› To save your favourite media, tap ★ › + and select the desired item.

› Tap ★ › ✎ › 🗑 to delete one favourite item.

› To delete all favourites, tap ★ › ✎ › 🗑 *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Restrictions

The availability of some media control functions depends on the connected source and the software used.

Technical data and specifications

USB

Applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS EXT3 EXT4
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MPEG H (H.265)	
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
WMV9	wmv asf

Maximum recommended video resolution is 1920×1080 and the frame rate is 60 frames per second. The following issues may occur when playing videos with a higher resolution or frame rate:

- The video will not play smoothly and the Infotainment system performance will be reduced during playback.
- The video will not play.

Supported playlists

File format	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile devices management

Using mobile devices

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.

› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

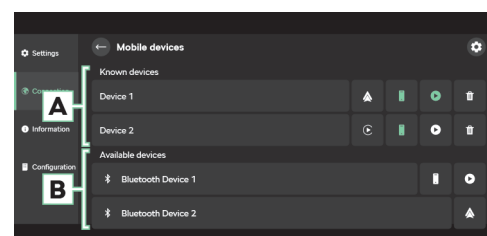
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.



- **A** Connected/previously paired devices
- **B** Available devices
- The device enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
- The device enables connection via Bluetooth® audio profile
- Removing the device from the list of previously paired devices
- The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
- The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of known devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Phone

Using the phone

Overview

Displaying the Phone application

› Tap ⁘ > ✆.

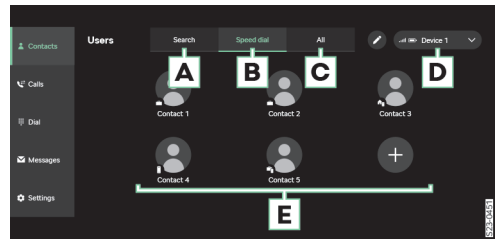
Or:

› Tap ✆ in the preferred applications.

🛈 If the phone functions are not available, check whether the mobile device is connected.
For the Apple phones, phone functions are available either via Apple CarPlay, or Bluetooth.

Managing contacts

1. In the **Phone** application, tap 👤.
2. If you have 2 phones connected, tap ⌄ and select the required phone.

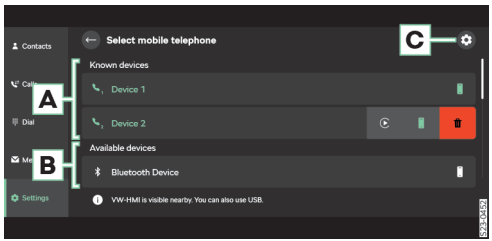


A Searching for contacts
B Displaying preferred contacts
C Displaying all contacts
D The name of currently used phone
E Presets for preferred contacts

🛈 If the phone contacts are not displayed, check the contact import confirmation request on the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

› Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** application.



A Main phone, additional phone and known devices

B List of available phones

C The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system

Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

To view the symbol and available SmartLink connections, tap the symbol and drag it to the left.

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the phone is switched on.

  Bluetooth® of the Infotainment system can be switched in > > > *Mobile device* > > *Bluetooth*.
- ✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system is switched on.

  Visibility of the Infotainment system can be switched in > > > *Mobile device* > > *Visibility*.
- ✓ The phone is within Bluetooth® signal range of the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, it is not possible to pair new devices while driving.

Phone – Infotainment connection

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

- › The main phone – if no phone is connected.
- › Additional phone – if 1 phone is connected
- › Select which phone to replace – if 2 phones are connected

1. To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** ⌄ in any menu of the application.
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone – Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.

3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of known devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Managing contacts

Operation

Displaying preferred contacts

› In the **Phone** application, tap .

Storing a preferred contact

1. Tap +.
2. Select or search for the required contact.
3. If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

Deleting a preferred contact

› Tap > in the **Phone** application.

› To delete one preset preferred contact, tap on the preset.

› To delete all preferred contacts, tap *Delete all* and confirm.

Changing preferred contacts position

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired contact until it is released.
3. Move the contact to another position.
4. To complete the changes, tap .

Settings

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include up to 5 phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Sorting contacts in the phone book

1. Tap > *Sort by:* in the **Phone** application.
2. Select the required sorting option.

Advanced setting

Updating phone contacts

When the phone reconnects with the Infotainment system, the list is automatically updated.

› For manual update of the list tap ⚙ > *Import contacts* in the **Phone** application.

Phone conversation

Overview

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call
- Rejecting an incoming call by a text message
- Receiving an incoming call
- Holding a call
- Returning to a call on hold
- Switching the ringer off
- Switching the ringer on
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Displaying caller details
- Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone
  The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.
- Displaying the keypad to dial a number
- Displaying the list of contacts

› To switch the call voice from the speakers to the phone, tap .

› To switch the call from the phone to the speakers, tap .

Operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** application, tap .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.
3. To dial, tap .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the feature is activated and you reject a call, you can send an SMS message to the caller.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ > *Reject call with text message template*.

Turning voice call quality on/off in HD

This feature allows you to improve the quality of your phone call.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ > *HD voice quality*.

Advanced setting

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To set the Infotainment system ringtone, tap in the **Phone** application ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Conference call

Overview

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of 3 and a maximum of 6 participants.

1. Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

   Or:

   During a call/conference in progress, accept a new incoming call by tapping .
2. To start a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference continues in the background)
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

Operation

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the feature is activated and you reject a call, you can send an SMS message to the caller.

› In the **Phone** menu, tap > *Reject call with text message template*.

SMS

Operation

Sending a text message

1. In the **Phone** application, tap .

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap and select SMS at the top left of the screen.
2. Press the field at the bottom of the screen to write a new message.
3. Write and confirm a text message.

   If you tap the text area, you can edit the message.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the message.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

› In the **Phone** application, tap .

Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap and select SMS at the top left of the screen.

Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation depending on the settings in the **Phone** application in ⚙ > *Show text messages as a conversation*.

If received messages are displayed individually:

1. Tap the message to have the voice assistant read the email and display the message menu.

   Or:

   To view the message menu without the voice assistant reading the email, swipe from right to left on the message.
2. Tap ✉ in the message menu.

If received messages are shown as a conversation:

› Tap a conversation to view it.

› To read a message with the voice assistant, tap the desired message in the conversation.

› To view an individual message, hold the desired message in the conversation.

You can choose the following functions in the displayed message or conversation:

- Forwarding a message
- Message or conversation options
- View a list of quick replies
  Tap a quick reply to send it immediately.

You can reply to an email by pressing the reply box.

ⓘ In the displayed conversation, the functions apply to the last message in the conversation.

Settings

Turning on/off showing text messages as a conversation

When this feature is activated, text messages are shown as a conversation.

› In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ > *Show text messages as a conversation*.

Switching on/off graphical notification when receiving a new message

If the feature is active, a new message symbol will appear on the **Phone** application icon and on the message button when a new message is received.

› Tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages* in the**Phone** application.

Email

Operation

Sending an email

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ✉.

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap ⌄ and select the desired email account at the top left of the screen.
2. Press the field at the bottom of the screen to write a new message.
3. Enter the subject of the message.
4. Write and confirm an email.
5. Search for or select the recipient of the email.

   Several recipients can be included.

6. Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ✉.

   Depending on the connected phone, it may be necessary to tap ⌄ and select the desired email account at the top left of the screen.
2. Tap the email to have the voice assistant read the email and display the email menu.

   Or:

   To view the email menu without the voice assistant reading the email, swipe from right to left on the email.
3. In the e-mail menu, tap ✉.

You can select the following features in the email displayed:

- Forwarding email
- ⋮ Manage email
- ⌄ Reply to all or only to sender

You can reply to an email by pressing the reply box.

If the 📎 symbol is displayed, the email contains an attachment.

Settings

Switching on/off graphical notification when receiving a new e-mail

If the feature is active, a new message symbol will appear on the **Phone** application icon and on the message button when a new message is received.

› Tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages* in the**Phone** application.

Mailbox

Operation

Connecting to the voicemail number

› Tap ⠿ > ⏀ in the **Phone** application.

🛈 If no voicemail number is entered, you will be prompted to enter one.

Settings

Setting up the voicemail number

1. In the **Phone** application, tap ⚙ > *Voicemail number:*.
2. Enter the voicemail number.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi use

Functionality

You can use the Wi-Fi to connect to the Internet or for SmartLink connections.

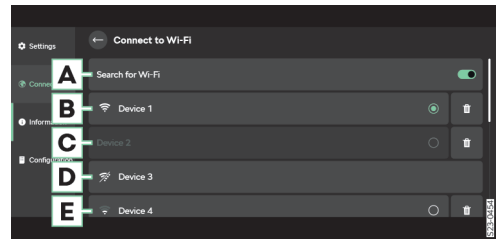
You can connect up to 8 mobile devices to the Infotainment system hotspot, and at the same time the Infotainment system can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview

List of available hotspots

› To display the list, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



- **A** Searching for available visible hotspots
- **B** Currently connected hotspot with maximum signal
- **C** Unavailable, previously connected hotspot
- **D** Available hotspot with insufficient security
- **E** Available, previously connected hotspot with weaker signal
- Currently connected hotspots
- Deleting the connection information of a hotspot
- Hotspot signal strength
- Insufficient security of the hotspot

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with secure access and WPA2/WPA3 encryption.

Wi-Fi connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment system Wi-Fi hotspot in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment Wi-Fi from the list of available Wi-Fi devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment system hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device Wi-Fi hotspot

1. Switch on the Wi-Fi unit of the Infotainment system in > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Search for Wi-Fi*.
2. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available hotspots.
3. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

ⓘ The Infotainment system remembers the passwords of previously connected hotspots.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters. It must also contain at least 1 lower case letter, an upper case letter, and a number.

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Data transfer with a connected device

› To switch on/off data transfer with the connected device, tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > .

Advanced setting

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Fast connection using a QR code

1. Tap > > > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Self-help

Tips for a seamless connection

ⓘ

› Leave only the hotspot being connected switched on and turn off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This will reduce the time required to establish a connection.
› Some hotspots take longer to connect, so wait until the connection is complete.
› If you break the connection, search for available hotspots again and repeat the connecting process.

SmartLink

Using the SmartLink function

Functionality

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Certification may depend on the use of the most up-to-date SmartLink application.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay

Overview

Displaying the SmartLink application

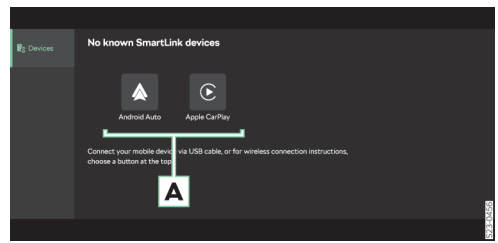
› Tap ⁘ > ▞.

Or:

› Tap ▞ in the preferred applications.

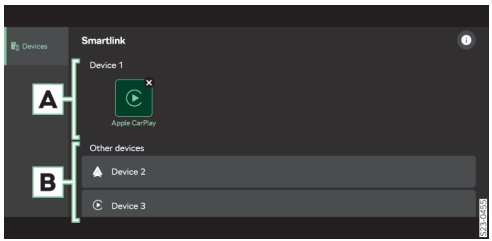
ⓘ When the device is connected in the SmartLink mode, the icon of the SmartLink application changes to ▲ or ▶, depending on the type of connection.

Menu for no connected devices



A List of supported connection types

Menu for the device in use, or the last connected device



A Currently used or last connected known device and the supported type of SmartLink connection

B Other connected devices

⊗ Terminating the connection

Conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink type connectivity of Android Auto or Apple CarPlay
- ✓ The mobile device and SmartLink connectivity type are supported in the relevant country.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications when driving

For safety reasons, some SmartLink applications cannot be operated while driving or are restricted in their use.

Settings

Switching to another device

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices.

› In the SmartLink application, select the desired device.

Android Auto

Overview

Displaying Android Auto menu

› In the SmartLink application, select the device with the ⏃ symbol from the list.



A List of available applications

B Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

C Returning to the Android Auto menu

Conditions

Connection conditions

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The mobile device and Android Auto connectivity are supported in the relevant country.
- ✓ The Android Auto application is installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Navigation function restriction

If you are navigating using the Infotainment system, starting navigation in the Android Auto application will stop the Infotainment system navigation.

If you are navigating using the Android Auto, starting navigation in the Infotainment system will stop navigation in this application.

Settings

USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. In the SmartLink application, select connection via Android Auto.

Connection of unpaired mobile device via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap > > > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the Bluetooth® “handsfree” profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. From the list of known devices, select the device with the symbol.

Connection of a paired mobile device via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. In the SmartLink application, select the device with the symbol from the list.

   Or:

   Tap > > > *Mobile devices*.

   From the list of known devices, select the device with the symbol.
3. If 2 other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Terminating the connection

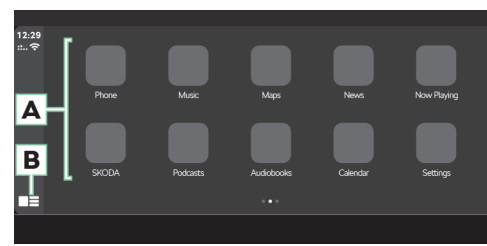
1. Tap “Škoda” in the Android Auto menu.
2. Tap .

Apple CarPlay

Overview

Displaying Apple CarPlay menu

› In the SmartLink application, select the device with the symbol from the list.



A List of available applications

B Depending on the length of operation:

› **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

Conditions

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports Apple CarPlay connectivity.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connectivity can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ The mobile device and Apple CarPlay connectivity are supported in the relevant country.
✓ Siri voice control is activated.
✓ The data connection on the mobile device is switched on.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Tap ⁘ > ⚙ > 🌐 > *Mobile devices*.
3. Look for the desired device with the ▶ symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ No other mobile device is connected via SmartLink.
✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the 🎤 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® Infotainment device.

3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Terminating the connection

1. Tap “Škoda” in the Apple CarPlay menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Navigation

Map

Overview

Displaying the Navigation application

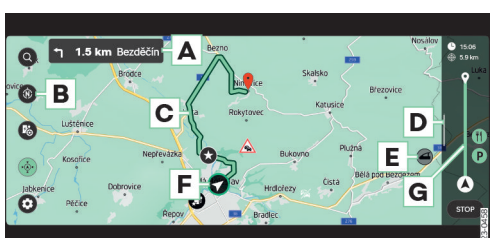
› Tap ⁘ > ➤.

Or:

› Tap ➤ in the preferred applications.

Map overview

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🗺.



A The following navigation instruction

Tapping: repeating the last voice navigation instruction

B **Tapping:** changing map orientation

- › 2D north-facing map
- › 2D map oriented by direction of travel
- › 3D map oriented by direction of travel

C Route

D **Pressing and dragging to the left:** displaying the route overview

E POI symbol

Tapping: displaying the details of the destination

F Vehicle location

Tapping: displaying the details of the vehicle location

G Route preview

STOP Exit navigation

Map centred on vehicle position

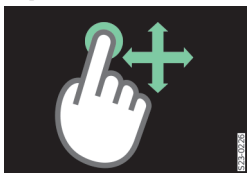
Displaying the displayed charging stations filter

Displaying the destinations menu

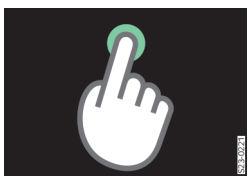
Displaying menu for setting the map view

Displaying the route and alternative routes

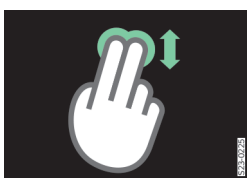
Operation



› Scrolling the map



› Tapping a point on the map to enter a destination



› Changing the map view 2D/3D



› Zooming in on the map



› Zooming out of the map



› Rotating the map

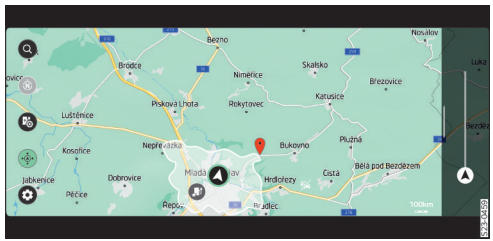
You can zoom in/out on the map by moving 2 fingers on the touch bar below the Infotainment system screen.

Settings

Displaying map with range information

The map shows the projected range by highlighted road sections.

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. In *Route e-planner* tap >.
3. Tap *Show range on map*.



Choice of map colour scheme

You can view the map in 2 different colour schemes for driving in the light or in the dark.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Colour scheme*.

› *Automatic* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle

› *Day* – map in day mode

› *Night* – map in night mode

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Basic functions* › *Define preferred POI categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter

When the filter is enabled, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be highlighted on the map.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Active*.

Setting up preferred charging stations filter

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. Set the desired charging station parameters.

Updating the navigation database

Automatic update

Maps are automatically updated online, if you have bought Infotainment Online ***» page 187*** service.

Manual update

For information on available updates, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following Škoda website.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Finding the version of the navigation database

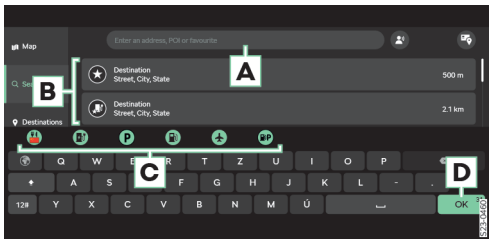
› Tap ⋮⋮ › ⚙ › ℹ › *System Information*.

Finding a destination

Overview

Finding a destination

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap 🔍 › 🔍.



A Input line

B Preferred destinations

C Categories of specific destinations

› **Tap:** search by the category selected

D Displaying the list of searched entries

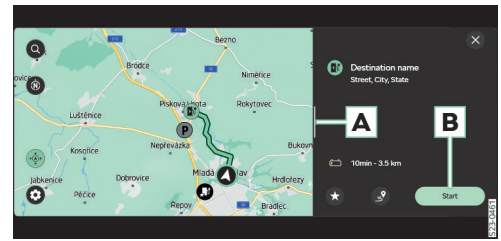
Setting the destination by entering the address

Destination details

The window with details include a map, available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

› After finding or selecting a destination in the menu.
› After you tap the destination in the route overview
› After you tap a point or a POI symbol on the map



A **Tapping and dragging to the left:** enlarging the window with destination details

Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:

› *Demo* – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode
› *Rename* – renaming the saved destination
› *Call* – dialling the phone number of a POI
› *Edit* – an option to edit the home or work address
› *Continue* – adding a destination to the route
› *Stop* – stopping navigating to the destination

B Starting navigating to the destination

› ★ – saving the destination as a preferred destination or charging station
› – displaying the route and alternative routes

Operation

Selecting a search target

1. Enter the data to search for a target.

2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Setting the destination by entering the address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > > .

   The menu for entering a destination by address is displayed.

2. Enter the required details.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Continue*.

Entering a destination using GPS coordinates

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > > > *Enter latitude and longitude*.

   The menu for entering a destination by GPS coordinates is displayed.

2. Enter the desired GPS coordinates including the latitude and longitude.
3. Tap *Map*.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Continue*.

Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Settings

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

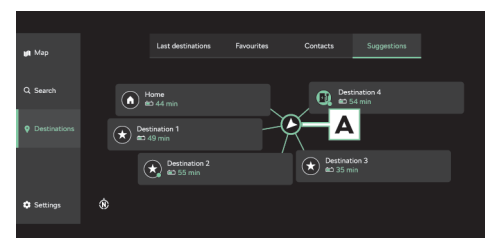
1. In the **Navigation** application, tap > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Predictive destinations

Overview

Suggested destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap > > *Suggested*.



A Vehicle position oriented north

Home address destination

Work address destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Work address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Operation

Deleting a suggested destination

1. Tap the button for the suggested destination and swipe left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.

Settings

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by the Infotainment system depending on the frequency of trips and the time of day you drive to the destination.

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage pattern*.

Recent destinations

Overview

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap 🔍 > 📍 > *Recent destinations*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting the last destination

1. Tap the button for the last destination and swipe left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Favourite destinations

Overview

List of favourite destinations

› In the **Navigation** application, tap Q > 📍 > *Favourites*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting a favourite destination

1. Tap the button for the favourite destination and swipe left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Renaming a favourite destination

1. Tap the button for the favourite destination and swipe left.
2. Tap ✎.

Settings

Setting the home address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap Q > 📍 > *Favourites* > *Home*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap Q > 📍 > *Suggestions* > 🏠.

Setting the work address

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap Q > 📍 > *Favourites* > *Work*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

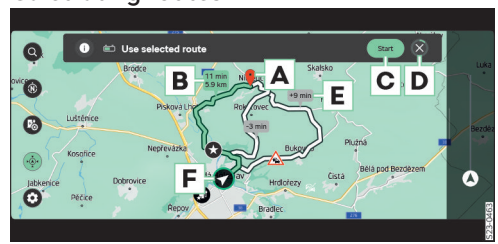
The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap Q > 📍 > *Suggestions* > 💼.

Route guidance

Overview

Calculating routes



A Destination location

B Suggested fastest route

C Starting navigation

D 15 seconds countdown before automatic start of navigation

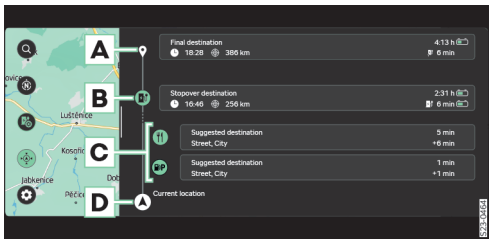
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown

E Alternative route

F Current vehicle position

ⓘ Displaying the selected route information

Route overview



A Final destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Stop route guidance*

B Inserted destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Delete*

C Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on map*

› *Add stopover*

D Information on the current vehicle position

Traffic density overview

If the Škoda Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the route overview:

Low density — — — High density

— Traffic density information is not available

Changing the route destinations

In the route overview, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the line is unlocked.
2. Drag the line to the desired position

   The route will be recalculated.

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Turning voice navigation instructions on/off

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ › *Navigation announcements*.

Repeating the last voice navigation instruction

› Tap the navigation instruction displayed on the screen with map in **Navigation** application.

Restrictions

The Infotainment system may issue incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or traffic conditions do not match the navigation data. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

The navigation data can be updated *» page 168*.

Settings

Setting navigation instructions

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. In *Navigation announcements* tap >.
3. Select and set the desired item.

Setting the route parameters

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance & routes* > *Route options*.
2. Select and set the desired item.

Enabling/disabling automatic adding charging stations on the route

If the function is enabled, the Infotainment system will automatically add charging stations on the route if necessary.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route e-planner*.

Enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter on the map

When the filter is enabled, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be highlighted on the map.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Active*.

Setting up preferred charging stations filter on the map

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. Set the desired charging station parameters.

Switching the range warning on/off

If the function is switched on and the charge level of the high-voltage battery drops below 10 %, a warning message is displayed with the option to locate the nearest charging station.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance & routes* > *Range warning*.

Setting the minimum range

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙.
2. In *Route e-planner* tap >.
3. Select the desired range.

Bypassing a traffic obstruction

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment system receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from the online traffic news, the route will be recalculated.

Based on the following settings, the Infotainment system may suggest to avoid a traffic congestion:

1. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance & routes* > *Avoid traffic congestion*.
2. Select the desired item.

Advanced setting

Switching the display of signs on motorways and express ways on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs and signals on motorways and expressways.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance & routes* > *Info signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the country speed limit display on/off.

If the function is switched on, the speed limits of the country are displayed when you cross the border.

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Route guidance & routes* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Demo mode

Use

In Demo mode, navigation from the starting point of Demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

If the function is on, the Infotainment system asks before starting navigation whether to navigate normally or in Demomode.

Settings

Switching Demo mode on/off

› In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Defining Demo mode starting point

1. Switch on the Demo mode
2. In the **Navigation** application, tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
3. Search for the desired destination to be the Demomode starting point.

Or:

1. Switch on the Demo mode
2. Select or search for the desired destination to be the Demo mode starting point.

   The details of the destination will be displayed.
3. Enlarge the destination details window by dragging the bar on the left edge of the window.
4. Tap *Demo*.

Online services

Škoda Connect

Regulations

Rights and obligations of the parties arising from the provision of these services are regulated in a separate contractual arrangement. Current legal documents relating to Škoda Connect services can be found in MyŠkoda application.

Functionality

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect services are not included in the vehicle equipment. They are ordered separately in the MyŠkoda application.

The range of Škoda Connect services depends on the type and equipment of the vehicle, on the Infotainment system and the country.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, or a link to downloading MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

Conditions

Škoda Connect services – conditions of use

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The registered user is authorised to use Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Availability of Škoda Connect services

Availability is based on the following conditions:

› Mobile networks providing connection to Škoda Connect services are available.
  › Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
  › In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
› Škoda Connect services are available for your vehicle, for the Infotainment system and for the country.
  › You can check availability on the following Škoda Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of Škoda Connect services

The availability of services is indicated by these symbols on the status bar on the Infotainment system screen:

› **White** – *Online mode* is activated. Škoda Connect services are available without localisation services.
› **White** – *Online mode (with location data)* is activated. Škoda Connect services are available with localization services.
› **Grey** – the vehicle is out of signal range.
› – *Online mode* is switched off. All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.

Restrictions

Škoda Connect services may be limited or interrupted in the following cases:

› During maintenance, deactivation, software updates, or restrictions with mobile network providers.
› Failure or insufficient reception of the GPS or mobile network signal, e.g. at high speed.
› If you are in locations with poor or no signal, e.g. underground garages, tunnels, mountain valleys.
› In case of limited availability, incomplete or incorrect information from third party providers, e.g. map display.

MyŠkoda application

Functionality

MyŠkoda application

The MyŠkoda website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, or remote access to the vehicle.

You can download the application to your mobile device by loading the following the QR code or the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda

Conditions

✓ The user has the Škoda ID account paired with the vehicle.

✓ The Škoda Connect services in the vehicle are active.

Data connection

Use

You need a data connection in the vehicle to use all online services.

Ways of creating a data connection

› By connecting the Infotainment system to an external hotspot with internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

› Via a data package for **eSIM** in the car.

ⓘ For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

ⓘ Data packages can only be bought on the website.

Restrictions

› In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.

› Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.

› Škoda Auto accepts no liability for changes in the mobile network over time, e.g. generational replacement of outdated technology.

Settings

Turning on/off the data connection to create a hotspot in the car

You can use a prepaid data connection to create a hotspot in the car.

The data connection can be shared by up to 8 connected devices via Wi-Fi.

› On the Infotainment system, tap > > *Connection* > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

Data package usage overview

You can purchase data packages on the following web site in data connection overview of your user account and view the current status of the already purchased packages:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Škoda Connect services user registration and activation

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a Škoda ID user account that you can use in all Škoda applications and services.

You can register as a Škoda Connect user in MyŠkoda application.

› Follow the instructions in MyŠkoda application to register.

When registering, you will create an S-PIN.
The S-PIN is used to authorise requirements within some Škoda Connect services and to log in to your protected user account.

Settings

activation of Škoda Connect services

The services are activated by the login of the main user.

After the main user is activated, the *Send location data* mode is switched off.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions.

The current privacy statement on protecting personal data can be found on this website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a party to the use of Škoda Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

If your travel companion does not agree to use location services, turn off *Location sharing*.

Functionality

When using Škoda Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

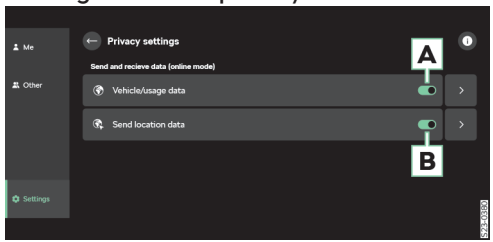
Disabled *Online mode* affects sending data and transferring data using eSIM. It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via Wi-Fi.

Settings

Legally required services, such as emergency calls, cannot be switched off.

The vehicle user can enable/disable *Online mode* and *Location sharing*.

Setting maximum privacy mode



A Switching *Online mode* on/off

B Enabling/disabling *Location sharing*

ⓘ Information on setting up privacy mode

Enabling/disabling *Online mode* in the *User* menu

1. On the Infotainment system, tap ⁘ > 👤 > ⚙ > *Setting up privacy mode*.
2. Select the desired item.

🛈 The symbol of enabled/disabled *Online mode* and *Location sharing* is displayed in the status bar.

Disabled *Online mode*

› All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.
› All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.
› No online updates are available.

Enabled *Online mode* and enabled *Location sharing*

› All Škoda Connect are enabled.
› Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location.
› Vehicle location information is available in MyŠkoda application.

Enabled *Online mode* and disabled *Location sharing*

› All Škoda Connect services apart from those using the vehicle's location are enabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymous data

If *Location sharing* is enabled, the vehicle can collect and send undisclosed data to improve the services of selected third parties.

These are exclusively undisclosed data without any link to a specific vehicle, its owner or other authorised user.

🛈 To use all Škoda Connect services, you must activate the *Location sharing* mode.

User management

What you should be mindful of

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user. The previous owner may still be able to control the vehicle's functions and obtain information about users and the vehicle.

It is therefore recommended that you delete the account of the previous main user by resetting it to factory settings. Then log in

with your own user account and set yourself as the primary user of the vehicle.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User management displays a list of logged-in users in the car. In user management, you can do the following:

› Select a user account
› Add and remove user accounts
› Set the security of the account

Overview

The primary user

The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated Škoda Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The primary user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The primary user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The primary user has access to remote vehicle functions.

The primary user can manage users with Škoda Connect account in MyŠkoda application menu User Management.

All settings are stored in the primary user's personal online account.

User with online Škoda Connect account

The user is not the primary user, but has their own online Škoda Connect account.

The user can make full use of the personalisation function and some services in MyŠkoda application.

All settings are stored in the logged-in user's personal online account.

Guest

The guest account is anonymous and does not synchronise with Škoda Connect services in any way.

All changes to the settings associated with this account remain stored in the vehicle only.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Conditions

In order to enjoy unlimited use of user account management and synchronisation with online accounts, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

User logging in

When the ignition and the Infotainment system are switched on, the initial login screen for the last user account used will be displayed.

› Confirm the logging in.

If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. Select the desired account.
3. If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

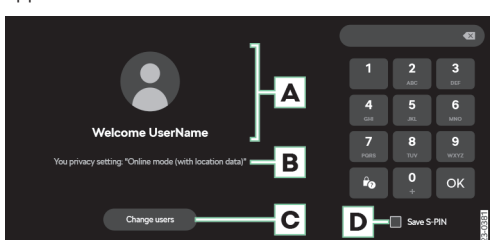
Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. If you are a new user, tap + to log in.
3. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Logging in to a protected user account

Some user accounts may be protected. Protected accounts are marked with the symbol 🔒 in the user list.

To log in to a protected user account, it is required to enter S-PIN that you created when opening your user account in MyŠkoda application.



A User name

B The set personal data protection level

C Displaying user account management

D Switching off login to your account using the S-PIN

Displaying information to restore the S-PIN

ⓘ Verifying the user by entering the S-PIN can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system in ⁘ > 👤 > ⚙ > *Login details* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN*.

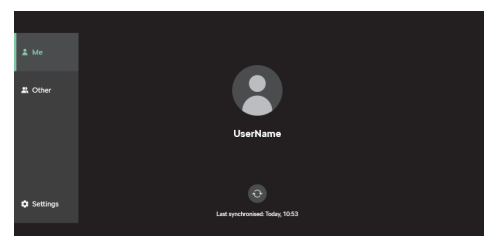
Restoring S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored in MyŠkoda application.

Settings

Managing the current user

› Tap ⁘ > 👤 > 👤 on the Infotainment system screen.



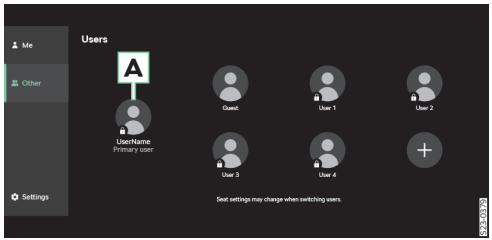
👤 Details of the currently selected user

👥 Switching to another user / Entering a new user

⚙ Settings

User management

› Tap ⠿ > 👤 > 👥 on the Infotainment system screen.



A Logged in main user of the vehicle

\+ Adding a new user

🔒 User account protected by an S-PIN.

✎ Displaying edit mode

Deleting a user

1. Tap ⠿ > 👤 > 👥 > ✎ > 🗑 on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting the current user account

1. In the Infotainment system, tap ⠿ > 👤 > ⚙ > *Delete active user*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting all users

Restoring the Infotainment system factory settings deletes all user accounts.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap ⠿ > 🔧 on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the user accounts and delete the primary user account.

Personalisation

Use

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the car's personalised functions to an active Škoda ID user account. Every change to the function settings is automatically saved when the ignition is switched off if the car is within the range of the contractual mobile network.

By logging in to the user account in another Škoda vehicle, the customisable functions associated with the user account are synchronised depending on the vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Over-the-Air update

Use

Over-the-Air update allows you to update the car's software without the need for a service visit.

For more information on Over-the-Air update, please visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

Operation

Installing the update

Once the update is available, the option to start the update will appear on the Infotainment system logout screen after the ignition is switched off

The option to start the update will appear if the ignition has been switched on for at least 5 minutes.

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Tap *Update available* on the Infotainment system screen.

   For more information about the content of the update, tap the *Further information* button.
4. Tap the *Install* button.
5. Leave the car and lock it.
6. After returning to the car, turn on the ignition and check the result of the update on the Infotainment system screen.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency calls may not be available during installation.

› Install the update when the vehicle is stationary.

ⓘ During installation, the vehicle cannot be charged and the ignition cannot be switched on.

Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- ✓ Ignition is switched off.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services have been activated in the car.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated in the vehicle.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery and the high-voltage battery have a sufficient level of charge.

Troubleshooting

If you experience any of the following conditions after an update, contact a professional garage:

› The Infotainment system display shows a message about an incorrect update installation.

› The Infotainment system display is still switched off after switching on.

› A message about an incomplete update is displayed in the digital instrument cluster.

Application updates

Operation

If an application update is available, the Infotainment screen will give you the option to start the update immediately or postpone it.

ⓘ You can also start the update while driving.

Starting a postponed update

1. Tap ⁘ > ⟳.

   Or:

   Tap the item for available application updates in the list of notifications.
2. To display information about the update, press the name of the update.

   To start the update, tap *Install now*.

Settings

Turning automatic application updates on/off

When enabled, the update will automatically start as soon as it is available. This feature is enabled by default.

› Tap ⁘ > ⟳ > ☰ > *Setting* > *Run updates for apps automatically*.

🛈 The function automatically updates system apps and apps from the Shop menu ***» page 185***.

Shop

Use

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

› Order new features and services

› Renew purchased features and services

Data packages

Data packages can also be used by devices connected via Wi-Fi.

For more information on Škoda Connect services, on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the Škoda Connect Shop website.

https://shop.skoda-connect.com

Overview

1. Tap ⁘ > 🛒 on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired function or service from the displayed list.

Conditions

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of Škoda Connect services.

Restrictions

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information calls

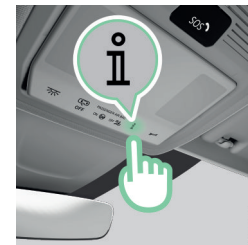
Use

You can use the information call in case of problems with Škoda Connect services or to obtain information about Škoda products and services.

Conditions

- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Operation



› Press the ℹ button.

Tap the ℹ button to contact the local hotline.

Breakdown call

Use

Breakdown call can be used in case of the vehicle breakdown.

Conditions

- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Operation



› Press the 🔧 button.

Tap the 🔧 button to contact the Škoda assist service. The vehicle also sends information about the status and position of the vehicle.

Škoda Connect services

Overview

Remote iV services

Remote iV services enable remote control of e.g. the following functions:

› Online air conditioning control
› Remote charging
› Departure planning
› Plug & Charge

Infotainment Online

The service can be used to extend the navigation in the Infotainment system with, for example, the following functions:

› Online traffic information
› Online map updates
› Charging stations
› Online route import

Remote access

The service allows you to access the following vehicle functions and information:

› Unlocking and locking
› Vehicle status
› Last parking position

Applications for the Infotainment system

The service can be used to extend the Infotainment system with, for example, the following applications:

› Offers
› Traffication – traffic warning
› Powerpass Map – up-to-date information on charging stations in the vicinity

On-demand functions

The service allows you to extend the vehicle's equipment with additional features, which can be purchased through the Škoda Connect Shop.

The functions may be time-limited or permanent.

For on-demand features information, see:

› Škoda Connect Shop » page 185
› MyŠkoda application » page 177
› Information line » page 186
› The Škoda Connect website » page 176

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

✓ *Online mode* and *Location sharing* are switched on in the vehicle.
✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

The ignition is switched on

Operating conditions

- ✓ The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- ✓ Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss or damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been left on the vehicle roof.
› Always keep the key with you.

Operation

The ignition is switched on



› Press the starter button.

Or:

› Depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

When the ignition is switched on and the automatic gearbox mode is selected, the vehicle starts moving slowly.
› Before selecting the automatic gearbox mode, depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!
› If the vehicle is moving, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ NOTICE

In extremely cold outdoor temperatures, the temperature of the high-voltage battery can drop so much that it may not be possible to start.
The motor can be started again when the temperature of the high-voltage battery has risen sufficiently.

Switching ignition off

› Press the starter button.

The ignition is also switched off automatically when the driver leaves the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

› When getting out, always check that the car is secured with the parking brake.

Troubleshooting

Ignition cannot be switched on as the system does not recognise the key

illuminated

1. Put the key into the front cup holder
2. Press the starter button.
3. If the ignition does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The ignition cannot be switched off

› Hold the starter button or press it twice.

Automatic gearbox

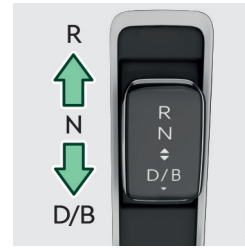
Automatic gearbox modes

Selecting the automatic gearbox mode

› To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector will then return to the default position.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



R **Reverse gear**

The **R** mode can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/B **Forward mode / Forward mode with high recuperation**

To select between **D** and **B**, move the selector lever backwards.

Unlocking the automatic gearbox

illuminates – automatic gearbox is locked

› Depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

› Secure the stationary car with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Select the required mode with the selector.

   READY appears on the instrument cluster display.
4. Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode **D/B** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Switch off the ignition.

Driving modes

Use

Driving modes allow you to tailor the car's handling to your driving style.

Overview

Eco mode

The ECO driving mode is suitable for fuel-efficient driving. Engine power is limited and top speed reduced to 130 km/h. The Climatronic switches to economy mode.

Comfort mode

Comfort driving mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long journeys on the motorway.

Normal mode

The Normal driving mode is suitable for normal driving style.

Sport mode

The Sport driving mode is suitable for sport driving style.

Traction mode

Applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.

The Traction driving mode is suitable for driving on slippery roads. Power is distributed optimally between the front and rear axles.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows you to individually adjust some of the vehicle's systems.

Operation

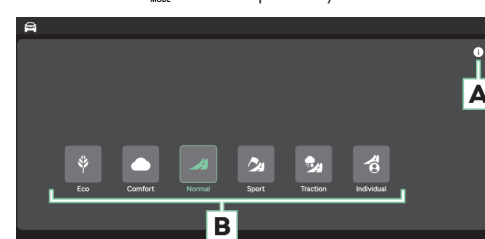
Selecting driving mode

1. Tap › on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired mode.

Or:

1. Press the MODE button under the Infotainment system.

   The Infotainment system will display the driving mode menu.
2. Press the MODE button repeatedly to select the desired mode.



A Information on the currently selected mode

B Driving modes menu

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive chassis DCC fault

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

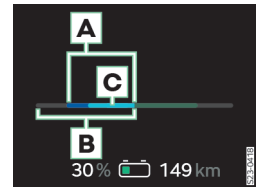
Regenerative braking

Use

Energy generated during braking is stored in the high-voltage battery by power recuperation. As the level of regeneration increases, the braking force when the accelerator pedal is released will also increase.

Overview

The regenerative braking indicator is shown on the instrument cluster screen.



A Currently available regenerative braking

B Maximum available regenerative braking

C Currently used regenerative braking

Currently available regenerative braking

Currently available regenerative braking represents the maximum regeneration range available at any given point of the journey.

Currently available regenerative braking depends for example on the following conditions:

› Ambient temperature
› High-voltage battery charge level
› High-voltage battery temperature
› High-voltage battery wear

Currently used regenerative braking

Currently used regenerative braking is that used by the car at a given moment of driving.

Maximum available regenerative braking

Maximum available regenerative braking is only available if the following conditions are met:

› Optimum high-voltage battery temperature
› High charge level of the high-voltage battery
› The the high-voltage battery is not worn out

Operation

Automatic regenerative braking

Automatic regeneration adapts the regenerative braking power to the current driving situation.

1. Select the **D** automatic gearbox mode.
2. Activate the Eco Assistant » *page 225*.

A**D** will be displayed on the instrument cluster screen.

ⓘ Tapping the **–** button or **+** on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual power regeneration setting. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, automatic regeneration is reactivated.

ⓘ Automatic regeneration can also take place in **B** automatic gearbox mode with the ACC activated. A**B** will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual selection of the regeneration level

1. Select the **D** automatic gearbox mode.
2. Deactivate the Eco Assistant » *page 225*.
3. Use the buttons on the steering wheel to select the power regeneration level.



A Selecting a lower power regeneration level

B Selecting a higher power regeneration level

ⓘ If no power regeneration level is selected, the vehicle moves without regenerative braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

˅**D** illuminates – light power regeneration

˅˅**D** illuminates – medium power regeneration

˅˅˅**D** illuminates – strong power regeneration

A**D** Illuminates – automatic power regeneration

ⓘ The higher the state of charge of the high-voltage battery, the lower the regenerative braking power.

ⓘ Power regeneration can also take place when the brake pedal is depressed.

Troubleshooting

Regenerative braking fault

illuminates together with
Message indicating a regenerative braking fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Overview

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Use the ECO mode » page 190.
› Use the **B** automatic gearbox mode for braking. This recharges the high-voltage battery.
› Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 291.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Driving with a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution!

ⓘ NOTICE

Frequent trailer journeys put excessive strain on the vehicle, so have it checked even between service checks.

Recommendations for driving with a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure of the vehicle for full load operation.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights of the vehicle and the combination as stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (e.g. vehicle registration document, COC document) and on the type plate.
› When driving with a trailer, the actual load of the vehicle and the load distribution in the trailer must be taken into account. A trailer attachment increases the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle and may reduce the weight of the payload.
› Adjust the headlight inclination to match the load on the vehicle. The front of the vehicle with the trailer attached may lift and the lights may dazzle other road users.
› Do not exceed the speed of **100 km/h**.
› If the trailer swerves sideways, reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal. Do not attempt to straighten the vehicle combination by accelerating.
› If you do not have a clear view of the traffic behind the trailer, have additional rear-view mirrors fitted.
› Brake in time. First lightly brake the trailer with the trailer brake, then steadily increase the pressure on the brake pedal. This will eliminate impacts caused by locked trailer wheels when braking.

Load distribution in the vehicle combination

› Secure heavy objects against shifting, preferably close to the trailer axle.
› Carry small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Electric motor type	Permissible trailer weight (kg)	
	Braked trailer [a]	Unbraked trailer
132 kW electric motor	1000	750
210 kW electric motor	1000/1200 [b]	750
250 kW electric motor	1200	750

[a] On gradients up to 12 %.

[b] Applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.

Tow eye and towing

Conditions for towing

- ✓ Technical condition of the vehicle allows towing.
- ✓ Ignition is on.
- ✓ The automatic gearbox mode **N** is selected.

Restrictions

› Towing speed up to 50 km/h

› Towing distance up to 50 km

Towing eye

Removing the front cap



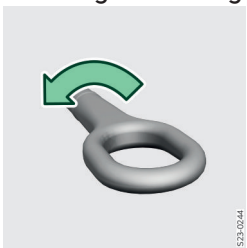
1. Push on the cap.
2. Remove the cap.

Removing the rear cap



1. Push on the cap.
2. Remove the cap.

Installing the towing eye



1. Screw in the towing eye.
2. Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
3. Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

⚠ WARNING

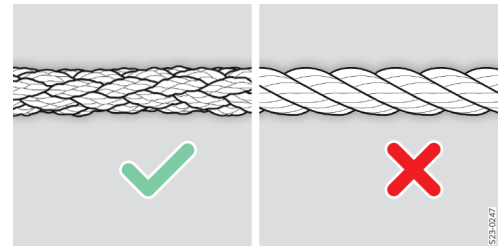
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering are not operational. The steering lock may also engage.

› The ignition must be switched on when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.

› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



ⓘ NOTICE

› The ignition must be switched on when the vehicle is being towed.

› Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

› The vehicle must not be towed with the axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› On the front towing eye

› On the rear towing eye

› On the tow bar fitted from the factory

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

1. Drive slowly and smoothly.
2. Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Select the **N** automatic gearbox mode.

Transportation by tow truck

The vehicle must have all wheels on the tow truck.

⚠ NOTICE

In an emergency situation, you can tow or push the vehicle towards the tow truck at walking speed and up to a distance of 100 m.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Risk of the brakes overheating!

› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

⚠ NOTICE

The vehicle uses for braking in the **D** or **B** modes mainly regenerative braking, whereby it uses the braking power of the electric motor. Therefore, the brakes are not loaded and the brake discs may be subject to corrosion.

› If road conditions permit, clean the brakes regularly by intermittent braking with the **N** mode selected. The vehicle does not use regenerative braking in this mode.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions

- ✓ Vehicle on a flat surface
- ✓ Ignition off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, do not continue.
2. Do not refill.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low brake fluid is indicated by the instrument cluster illuminating (!). However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the **MIN** mark, there may be a leak in the brake system.

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. This standard meets the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Replacing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the brake fluid replacement interval is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system fault

illuminates together with

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› If road conditions permit, clean the brakes regularly by intermittent braking with the **N** mode selected.

The brake booster does not work when the ignition is off

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electrical parking brake

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

› Always make sure the parking brake is on before leaving the car. Switching on is indicated by lighting Ⓟ on the instrument cluster and red indicator light in the parking brake switch.

⚠ WARNING

Switch lock hazard!

› The finger recess in front of the switch Ⓟ must remain empty.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› If the vehicle needs to move freely, in the car wash for example, make sure the parking brake is off.

Switching on



› Pull the switch Ⓟ and hold it.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, the parking brake will turn on automatically.

The indicator light A in the switch and Ⓟ on the instrument cluster illuminates.

Switching off

The parking brake is automatically deactivated when the automatic gearbox mode is selected.

Deactivating the parking brake before leaving the vehicle

If it is necessary to allow the vehicle to move freely after you leave it, proceed as follows:

1. On the infotainment, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes* > *Deactivate now*.
4. Depress the brake pedal and select the mode **N** of the automatic gearbox.
5. Get out of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Electric parking brake fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashing

Message about parking on a slope that is too steep.

› Move to a parking space with less slope.

When the parking brake is applied, noise is generated

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a fault.

The 12V vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the 12V vehicle battery to a power source such as another car's 12V vehicle battery.

Emergency braking in the event of a brake system failure

Switching on



› Pull the Ⓟ button and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **strongly** and an acoustic signal sounds.

Switching off

› Release the Ⓟ key.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic securing of the car

Use

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle against movement when it stops.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Auto Hold cannot hold a vehicle stationary on a slope in all circumstances, e.g. on a slippery surface.

Securing and unlocking the vehicle

When the vehicle **stops,** Auto Holdautomatically **secures** it. The message HOLD illuminates in the instrument cluster. You can release the brake pedal.

When the vehicle **starts,** Auto Hold automatically **unlocks** it.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

HOLD Illuminated – Auto Hold is activated and prepared to intervene

HOLD illuminated – Auto Hold secures the vehicle against movement

Automatic securing the vehicle with the parking brake

In some cases, the parking brake can take over the securing of the vehicle. Ⓟ will be illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ Ignition is on.
- ✓ Auto Hold is activated.
- ✓ Automatic transmission mode N is not selected.

Settings

Activation and deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Auto Hold* item and activate or deactivate the feature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Deactivate Auto Hold before entering a car wash where free movement of the vehicle is required.

Electronic engine sound (e-Sound)

Functionality

e-Sound generates an electronic engine sound when driving at speeds up to 25 km/h.

ⓘ e-Sound cannot be switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Despite the e-Sound, the vehicle may not be clearly heard by other road users.

Troubleshooting

e-Sound fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)

ESC helps stabilise the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC is engaged

ESC Sport

ESC Sport enables a more sporty driving style.



Illuminated – activated ESC Sport

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps stabilise the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when they start spinning.

 flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is signalled by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)

MSR helps maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels on the driven axle lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the engine braking effect and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps stabilise the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with varying grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes the spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps keep the vehicle turning by effectively braking the wheels on the inside of the turn.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB helps decelerate and stabilise the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions:

✓ Following a front, side and rear collision of a certain force.

- ✓ The speed at the time of impact exceeded 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

TSA helps stabilize the trailer combination If the trailer combination starts to sway, the TSA stabilises it by braking individual wheels of the vehicle.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The towing bracket is supplied from the factory or purchased from the Škoda Genuine Equipment range.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the towing bracket socket.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)

eBKV makes it easier to depress the brake pedal. At the same time, it allows the high-voltage battery to be recharged by regenerative braking.

When the ignition is switched off, the eBKV function is limited or unavailable.

If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Regenerative braking.

Regenerative braking generates energy that is stored into the high-voltage battery. The strength of the braking effect depends on the selected driving mode and the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

Regenerative braking may cause brake pedal pulsation and fluctuating deceleration.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

1. On the Infotainment screen, tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Deactivating ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

- › Driving with snow chains
- › Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
- › Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Activation/deactivation of ESC Sport

1. On the Infotainment screen, tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When activated, in the instrument cluster illuminates.

When deactivated, the light goes out.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction, ESC or ASR switched off by the system

illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ABS malfunction


illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault


illuminates together with 

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster fault


illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.


illuminated

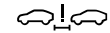
› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle in front of you and warns you if you do not keep a safe distance. In an emergency situation, it helps to avoid a collision by braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen


illuminated – failure to keep a safe distance


illuminated – warning if there is a risk of collision

Automatic braking when there is a risk of collision

When there is a risk of collision,  will illuminate as a warning. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

At speeds up to 30 km/h, the vehicle will start braking without warning.

Automatic braking can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.

The brake system pressure is increased during automatic braking. The brake pedal cannot be depressed within its normal range.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 5 km/h.

Restrictions

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Front Assist does not react to vehicles moving across the road.
It has a limited response to vehicles moving in the opposite direction.
If the vehicle is approaching an obstacle at a very high speed, the system's response may be delayed.

Limitation or unavailability of the function

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- Approximately 30 seconds after staring (indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated)
- When negotiating a steep curve
- During ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation and settings in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

- *Active* – activation/deactivation of Front Assist
- *Display distance warning* – activating/deactivating the display of distance warning
- *Swerve support* – when activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by braking and assisting steering control.
- *Oncoming vehicle braking w. turning* – when activated, the system can apply the brakes at low speeds when turning to avoid collision with oncoming traffic.

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated

OFF

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of Front Assist

illuminates together with

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
4. If the Front Assist system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
5. If the brake lights are working and the Front Assist system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

There has been an unfounded warning or system intervention

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. If the system still does not work properly, deactivate the Front Assist system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection

Functionality

Pedestrian detection helps to avoid collisions with pedestrians moving across or along the road by automatic braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – danger of collision

Risk of collision at speeds between 5– 30 km/h

The system automatically applies the brakes.

Risk of collision at speeds between 30– 85 km/h

The system first warns of a collision risk. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

Conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is 5 – 85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter regulates the maximum speed of the vehicle to a set speed limit.

Speed limiter with predictive control

The speed limiter with predictive control is an extension of the speed limiter system.

If the system detects a speed limit, a message will appear on the instrument cluster screen.

The system automatically sets the speed limit according to the detected speed limit, even if the speed limiter is deactivated.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data

› Traffic sign recognition

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed
flashing – the set limit is exceeded

When cruise control starts, the set speed limit is displayed.

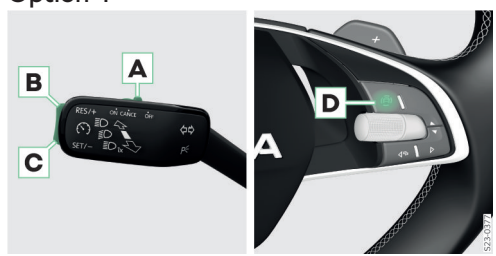
OFF illuminated – speed limiter is deactivated

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.

Operation

Option 1



A **ON** Activating cruise control (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming control[1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

D Depending on the equipment: switching between the limiter and cruise control

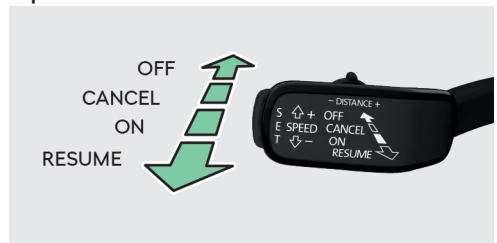
Switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation.

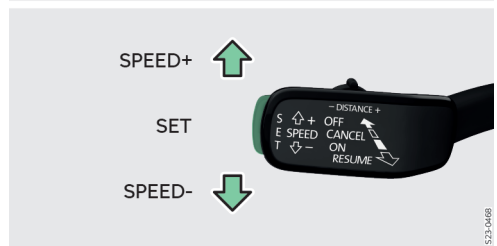
Changing the speed limit using the B button and C

Pressing in **1 km/h** increments

Holding in **10 km/h** increments

Option 2





ON Activating cruise control /ACC (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the speed limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and select the item for speed limiter on the instrument cluster.

RESUME Starting or resuming control[1] / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Switching between speed limiter, cruise control and ACC (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Interrupting cruise control

› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Restrictions

The function of the speed limiter with predictive control may be limited, e.g. in the following cases:

› Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.
› Traffic sign recognition is unavailable.
› GPS signal reception is insufficient.
› Weather conditions are unfavourable.

Settings

Activation/deactivation of speed limiter with predictive control

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system > > > .
2. Activate/deactivate speed limiter

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter fault

LIM illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

What you should be mindful of

Do not use CCS in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the need to depress the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally

› Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – cruise control is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

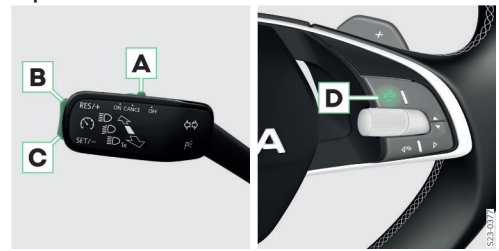
OFF illuminated – cruise control is deactivated

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 20 km/h.

Operation

Option 1



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming the cruise control [1] / Increasing speed limit

C **SET/-** Starting the cruise control with current speed / Reducing speed limit

D Switching between the cruise control and the speed limiter

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Option 2



ON Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

RESUME Starting or resuming control / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Switching between cruise control, ACC and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system fault

illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the cruise control system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
3. If the brake lights are working and the cruise control system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

What you should be mindful of

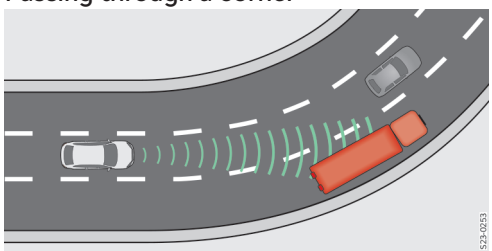
⚠ WARNING

› In the following situations, increase your attention and be prepared to intervene.

Regulating the speed according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

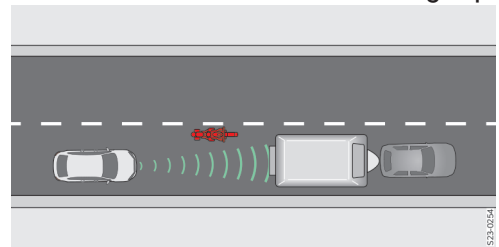
If your vehicle is travelling faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side at speeds above 80 km/h, your vehicle's speed may be regulated according to this vehicle.

Passing through a corner



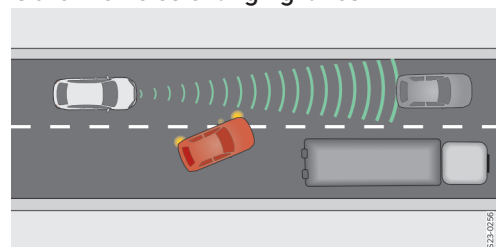
A vehicle in the adjacent lane may enter the monitored area when going around a corner. Your vehicle's speed will be regulated according to this car.

Narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel



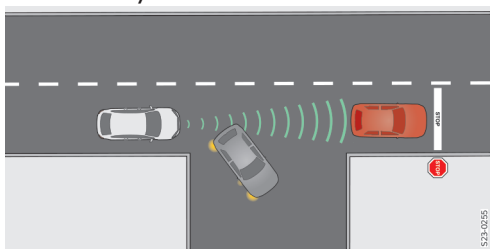
ACC will only detect a narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel in the adjacent lane when it enters the monitoring area.

Other vehicles changing lanes



The ACC system may not be able to detect in time a vehicle that changes lanes just in front of you.

A stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front of you turns and another vehicle is in front of that vehicle, the ACC system **may not react** to this stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special loads or special extensions

Cargo or extensions that protrude outside the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC system.

Functionality

ACC speed control

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to any objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ⓘ ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC (Predictive adaptive cruise control)

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts the speed based on information obtained from the following sources:

- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

pACC using shared online data

For a better evaluation of the situation, the system uses data shared with other vehicles (depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market).

To use shared data, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ Travel Assist or ACC has been activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ Online mode (sharing location and vehicle and user data) » *page 176* is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle has an active licence for using Travel Assist online data.

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range

ACC allows you to adjust the speed according to the car's equipment within a range of 20– 210 km/h.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic gearbox at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased

to 20 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the car in front of you in 5 different levels.

⚠ WARNING

› Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.

› Always set a greater distance when visibility is reduced.

START-STOP system

The vehicle can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again.

The vehicle's readiness for automatic start is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster screen.

The auto-start readiness is time-limited and can be extended in one of the following ways:

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME**position

› Hold the steering wheel (applies to vehicles with hand detection on the steering wheel)

Manual start

› Depress the accelerator pedal

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME**position

⚠ WARNING

› Check the roadway and be prepared to brake before each start.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen


illuminated – ACC is active


illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.



illuminated – ACC is deactivated


illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.



illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

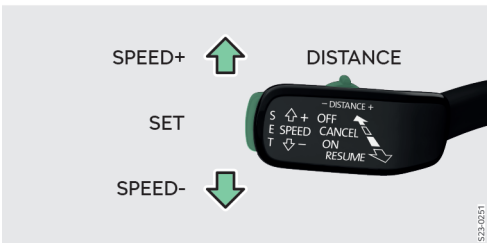

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.


illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction


illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation





ON Activating ACC (no cruise control is in operation)

RESUME Starting or resuming control / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF ACC deactivation

SPEED + Increasing the speed in 10 km/h steps

SPEED – Decreasing the speed in 10 km/h steps

DISTANCE Setting the distance level

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Switching between ACC, cruise control and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Starting regulation

› Tap **SET**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

If the speed is not stored in memory, you can also start the current speed control by moving the lever to the **RESUME** position.

Resuming the control

› If the speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the **RESUME** position.

The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster screen.

Rejecting a speed limit or an approaching event

If the pACC displays an upcoming event or a speed other than the stored speed on the instrument cluster, you can reject it as follows:

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME** position.

The vehicle will be regulated at the previously set speed.

Or:

› Tap **SET**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

Immediate takeover of the speed limit

If the pACC displays higher speed than the stored speed on the instrument cluster screen, you can take it over immediately in the following way:

› Put the selector lever to **SPEED +** position.

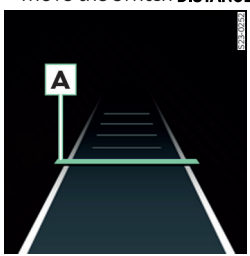
The vehicle will accelerate to the newly set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› When the brake pedal is depressed while driving
› Put the selector lever to **CANCEL**position
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation
› After ESC Sport activation

Setting the distance level

› Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The screen will show **A** line indicating change of distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Restrictions

Do not use the ACC system in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

If the navigation map data is out of date, the pACC may react to speed limits that no longer exist and change the speed unexpectedly.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

On the Infotainment system menu › › › .

› *Driving profile:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » page 190)
› *Last distance selected* – turning on/off of the last selected distance level
› *Distance:* – setting the default distance from the vehicle in front of you
› *Road layout response* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
› *Speed limit response* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of ACC

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the ACC system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
4. If the brake lights are working and the ACC system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane

Use

Lane Assist helps keeping the vehicle in the lane. It is guided by demarcation lines, which may be boundary lines, road edges or objects such as kerbs or crash barrier.

The system is designed primarily for driving on the motorway

Functionality

If the vehicle approaches the demarcation line, the system will turn the steering wheel in the direction away from the demarcation line. The steering intervention can be manually corrected.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: The system will not intervene when changing lanes with the turn signal on.

Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle by means of the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing. The system will intervene even if the indicator light is on.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

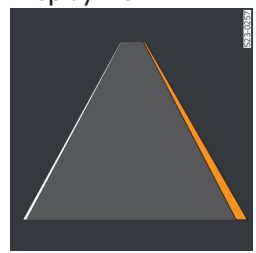
Illuminated – the system is activated and prepared to intervene

illuminated – the system is intervening

Illuminated – the system is activated and not prepared to intervene

illuminated – system is deactivated

Display view



Highlighted right bar: the system intervenes when the vehicle is approaching the demarcation line on the right.

Steering wheel vibration warning

The steering wheel vibrates in the following situations:

› The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.
› *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on.
› *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on. If Side Assist

warns of an approaching vehicle with the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing, the steering wheel will vibrate even if the indicator light is on.

› If the steering wheel vibrates, correct the steering control.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 65 km/h.

✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.

› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.

› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!

Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Deactivating/activating the system

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

ⓘ The system can also be activated/deactivated in the control centre » page 127 or in the Infotainment system favourite functions » page 121, if the Lane Assist button is set.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

ⓘ After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
2. Switch the ignition off, and after a while, switch it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed and distance from the vehicle in front of you.

On vehicles with Side Assist and Smart Parking Assist, it also helps you change lanes.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses Lane Assist, ACC and Side Assist functions (depending on vehicle equipment).

ⓘ Travel Assist is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.

› Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen



illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress



Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress



illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress



illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering



illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

If you do not respond to the warning, the system will automatically shut down or the Emergency Assist will be activated (depending on vehicle equipment).

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Travel Assist using shared online data

For a better evaluation of the situation, the system uses data shared with other vehicles (depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market).

To use shared data, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ Travel Assist is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ *Online mode (with location data)* » **page 176** is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle has an active licence for Travel Assist.

Assisted lane change

Applies to vehicles with Side Assist and Smart Parking Assist.

This function allows you to automatically change lanes by moving the turn signal lever to the spring-loaded position.

The function is designed for driving on motorways only.

To activate the function, Travel Assist must be reactivated when driving on the motorway.

Display view

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.



A The arrows showing the status of the Assisted Lane Change.
- › Full arrow – you can change lanes in the direction of the arrow. The adjacent lane will be highlighted.
- › Contour arrow – it is not possible to change the lane in the direction of the arrow.

B Lane marked during the overtaking manoeuvre.

If the system determines that it is safe to change lanes, the display will show a solid arrow pointing in that direction.

› Move the direction indicator lever to the sprung position. The vehicle will change lanes.

Conditions

Applies to vehicles without the Assisted Lane Change function.

- ✓ ACC is activated.
- ✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.

- ✓ ACC is activated.
- ✓ Side Assist is activated.
- ✓ The Assisted Lane Change function is activated.
- ✓ Driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling on the motorway.
- ✓ Travel Assist has been activated or reactivated when driving on the motorway.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 90 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

The Travel Assist system is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- › The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
- › Unfavourable weather conditions.
- › The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- › The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- › The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

In addition to these limitations, observe the ACC limitations » *page 209*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Activation/deactivation of Assisted lane change

The function can be activated/deactivated only in the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Switching between Travel Assist, ACC, and the speed limiter

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **OFF** position or **CANCEL** » *page 212*.

Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » *page 215* and ACC » *page 214*.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Side Assist – lane change system

Use

The system warns of vehicles that may pose danger when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

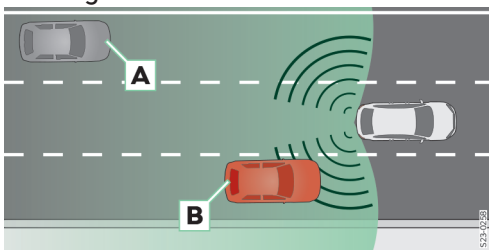
The system warns of an approaching car by means of a warning light ■ in the external mirror housing on the side where the car is detected.

The indicator light brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

⚠ WARNING

In strong sunlight, the indicator light may be hard to see.

Driving situations in which the system provides warning



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster the A vehicle is approaching, the sooner the warning light starts to warn you.

The B vehicle is being overtaken by your vehicle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h higher. The warning light does not indicate if you are overtaking faster than this.

The indicator light

■ **illuminated** – there is another vehicle behind you

■ **flashing** – there is another vehicle behind you and on the same side, the direction light is on.

On vehicles with the Lane Assist system, the warning light also flashes if your vehicle crosses the line of demarcation towards the approaching vehicle. The system will also vibrate the steering wheel.

The Lane Assist system with steering wheel vibration must be activated and the line of demarcation between the vehicles must be detected.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Restrictions

The system does not detect the lane width. Therefore, in the following cases, for example, it may warn you of a vehicle in a further lane:

› A vehicle is driving on a roadway with narrow lanes or on the edge of the lane.

› The vehicle is negotiating a bend.

The system may warn of objects along the road, such as high barriers, noise barriers or tunnel walls.

In the following cases, the system may not warn of a vehicle or may warn incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.

› The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve or roundabout.

› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting brightness

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Side Assist system malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Use

Traffic sign recognition shows traffic signs on the instrument cluster screen. It also warns you when you are speeding.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

› Traffic signs in the traveled route section
› A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Traffic signs displayed

› Speed limit
› No overtaking
› No entry – one-way traffic
› Warning signs
› Additional traffic signs, e.g. speed limit on wet roads

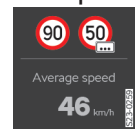
Driving with a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the towing bracket, the traffic signs applicable to driving with a trailer are also displayed.

Driving on a road without a speed limit

If you are on a road without a speed limit, the traffic sign will appear on the screen.

Example of traffic sign display



Status display on the instrument cluster screen

lights up – unavailable map data

OFF lights up – the set warning is not in accordance with the legislation

Speed units

The speed data on the displayed traffic signs are in the units valid in the respective country.

For example, 30 can mean 30 km/h or 30 mph, depending on the country.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor is dazzled by the sun or the lights of oncoming traffic.
› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle or a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling at high speed.

› Traffic signs are obscured, damaged or not up to standard.
› Traffic signs are mounted on lighted shields with flashing lights.
› Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.

Settings

Automatic activation

When the ignition is switched on, the system is activated automatically to a setting that complies with legislation.

Activation/deactivation and setting of the speed warning in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

■ *Speed warning:*

› *Active*
› *Speed warning:* – setting a warning when speeding
› *Warning threshold* – increasing the speed limit for the speed warning[1)]
› *Info sound when changing the permitted maximum speed*

Activation/deactivation and setting of trailer recognition in the Infotainment system

In the > > > menu.

■ *Trailer recognition*

› *Active* – deactivating/activating the display of traffic signs valid for driving with a trailer
› *Maximum speed for trailers* – setting maximum speed for driving with a trailer

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Proactive passenger protection – Crew Protect Assist

Use

The Proactive Crew Protection system activates measures to protect the occupants of the vehicle in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, the following safety measures are activated:

› Hazard warning lights start flashing.
› Open windows begin to close to a small gap.
› The front seat belts are pulled against the body.

ⓘ The system's response depends on the selected driving mode.

---

1) *Standard* means increase in speed limit approximately by 1 km/h and 3 % of the permissible speed.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the system is intervening

Risk of frontal collision

Applies to vehicles with Front Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a frontal collision.

Danger if the driver is not active

Applies to vehicles with Emergency Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent danger when the driver is inactive.

Restrictions

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- When ASR is deactivated
- When ESC Sport is activated
- When the Sport mode is selected.
- When reversing
- In the event of ESC, reversible seatbelt, or airbag system malfunction
- In the event of a fault or malfunction of the Front Assist system
- In the event of malfunction or restricted operation of the Emergency Assist system

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Proactive passenger protection fault

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection

Functionality

The Fatigue detection assistant evaluates the vehicle's handling. If it detects signs of driver fatigue, it will recommend a pause from driving. The display in the instrument cluster lights up with ☕ and at the same time an acoustic signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not warn if you fall into a micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- Stopping and switching off the ignition

› Stopping, unbuckling the seat belt and opening the driver's door
› Stopping for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may recommend a break incorrectly.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation, setting sensitivity

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of fatigue detection

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Inattention detection

Functionality

Driver inattention assist monitors driver's behaviour when driving the car. If the system detects driver's inattention, the display in the instrument cluster lights up with and at the same time an acoustic signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

Driver inattention assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 10 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation, sound warning, sensitivity setting

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of driver inattention assistant

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Emergency Assist – assistant for emergency situations

Use

The Emergency situations assistant recognises driver inactivity that may be caused by, for example, sudden loss of consciousness. The system then takes action to stop the vehicle as safely as possible.

Functionality

If the assistant detects driver inactivity

› An audible signal sounds and a message appears on the instrument cluster screen.
› If the driver does not resume control after repeated warnings, the warning lights will come on and the car will automatically brake.
› When the vehicle stops, the parking brake is applied and, depending on the vehicle's equipment, an emergency call may be initiated.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen



illuminated – the system is intervening

Interrupting automatic braking

› Depress the brake or accelerator pedal
› Move the steering wheel

Conditions

✓ Lane Assist or Travel Assist is activated and the lane lines are detected.

Settings

Automatic activation

Emergency assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Emergency Assist malfunction



illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Eco Assist automatic power regeneration assistant

Use

Eco Assist supports economical driving by means of instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Functionality

If the system evaluates a possible improvement in fuel economy, the following information will be displayed in the instrument cluster:

› A symbol of an upcoming event, e.g. speed limit, intersection, etc.
› – recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle adjusts its speed and power regeneration to the current situation.

Pressing the − button or + on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual power regeneration setting. When the ac-

celerator pedal is depressed, automatic regeneration is reactivated » page 192.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

Restrictions

The feature is not available in the following cases:

› When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is activated.
› When the cruise control is activated.
› When the Sport mode is selected.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

On the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Parking assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system screen and an acoustic signal sounds.

The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

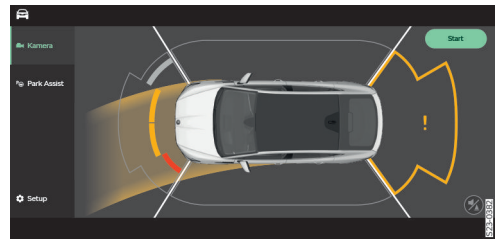
Automatic emergency braking

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic emergency braking can be activated and deactivated in the Infotainment system menu > > > .

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



Switching off/on the audible alarm

Park assist

! System fault

! Dirty or covered sensors

■ Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres

■ Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres

□ Obstacle outside the driving path

Conditions

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Switching on/off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Press the PARK button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic activation when driving forward

When approaching an obstacle at speeds below 10 km/h.

Automatic braking is not activated during automatic activation.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the PARK button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic deactivation

The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not issue an obstacle warning, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The detected obstacles moving.
› Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
› The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

To view the system setting menu, do the following:

1. Press the PARK button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Press > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select Parking Aid

Troubleshooting

Parking aid Park Pilot malfunction

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas appear on the Infotainment system display

1. Move the vehicle forward or backward a few metres.
2. If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

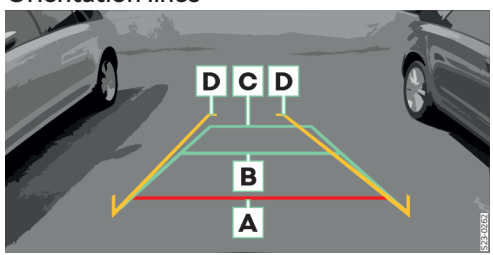
Functionality

When reversing, the Infotainment screen will show the area behind the vehicle with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a washer. Spraying is done automatically together with the rear window spraying or via the function surface on the Infotainment system display.

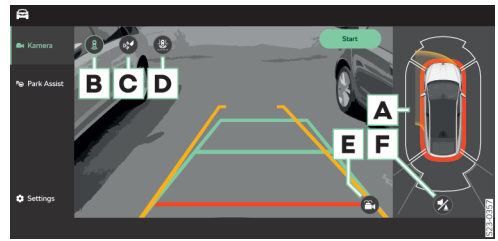
Overview

Orientation lines



- **A** Distance about 40 cm
- **B** Distance about 100 cm
- **C** Distance about 200 cm
- **D** The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function buttons



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Parking aid preview
- **B** Perpendicular parking mode
- **C** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **D** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **E** Function area for the rear camera washer
- **F** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

Full parking aid screen can be activated by tapping the preview.

Conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

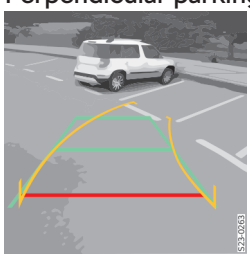
Or:

1. Press the PARK button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Press > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Perpendicular parking mode



1. Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
2. Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking gap.
3. Stop at the latest when the red line reaches the rear boundary (e.g. kerb).

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

On a vehicle with a factory fitted towing device, this mode helps to guide the vehicle towards the trailer's draw bar. The screen shows the track line for guiding to the trailer.

Rear view mode

The screen shows the area behind the vehicle in a wide-angle view.

Switching off the system

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the PARK button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen, including narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

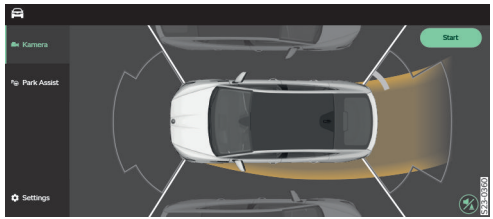
Monitoring the surroundings Top View

Use

Monitoring the surroundings assists with parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle's surroundings.

Overview

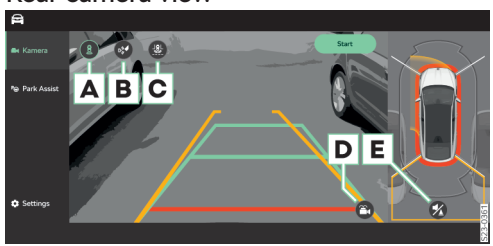
Overall view



Selecting the view

Select the view by touching the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette on the Infotainment system screen. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the screen.

Rear camera view



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

A Perpendicular parking mode

B Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

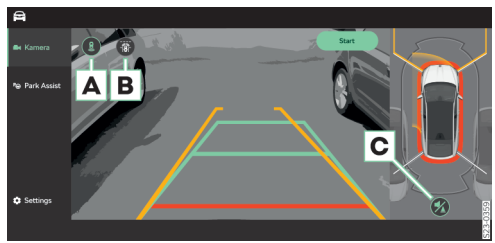
C Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)

D Function area for the rear camera washer

E Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a washer. Spraying is done automatically together with the rear window spraying or via the function surface on the Infotainment system display.

Front camera view



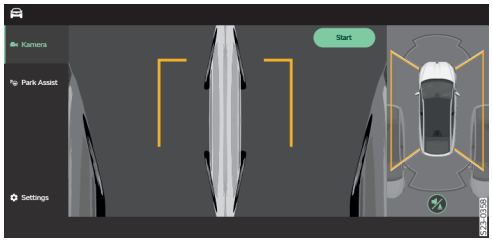
The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

A Perpendicular parking mode

B Front view mode (wide-angle view)

C Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

Side camera view



Left and right-hand side.

The yellow line is shown approximately 40 cm from the vehicle.

Conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.
› Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Press > P > on the Infotainment system screen.

Selecting the view

› Tap the area next to, in front of or behind the silhouette of the vehicle in the Infotainment system. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the screen.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press P on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some objects may not be sufficiently visible, such as narrow posts, wire fences, grates, or uneven roadways.

Objects in the vicinity of the corners of the vehicle may be out of the field of view of the cameras and therefore may not be shown on the display.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

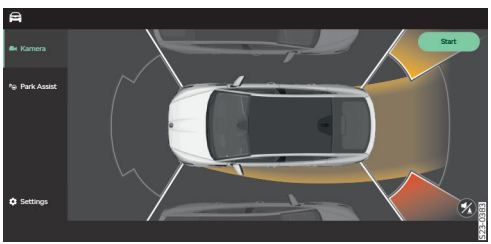


Rear Traffic Alert warns you of approaching vehicles when reversing.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

System signalling

A graphic warning will be displayed on the Infotainment system screen when a vehicle is detected approaching in the area behind your vehicle. A continuous audible signal sounds when reversing.



- Vehicle in collision zone – risk of collision!
- Vehicle approaching

Conditions

✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing device socket.

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.
› The object is approaching at a very high speed.

⚠ WARNING

The system may not alert you to people behind the car.

Settings

To view the system **activation/deactivation** menu, do the following:

1. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment screen.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Press 🚗 > P > ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Troubleshooting

Rear Traffic Alert malfunction

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle

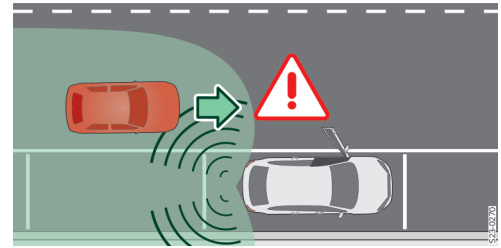
Use

The door release assistant warns of approaching objects when opening the door to prevent a possible collision.

Functionality

The assistant monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

Driving situations in which the system provides alerts



Situations in which the system alerts

› The warning light ■ in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected flashes and then it illuminates.

› A warning tone is emitted.

Alert if there is no imminent collision

› The warning light ■ in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected illuminates.

ⓘ The indicator light will illuminate even if the doors are closed and the automatic gearbox is in **P** mode.

Conditions

✓ The vehicle is stationary.
✓ Ignition is on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is greater than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

The assistant remains active for approximately 3 minutes:

› After the ignition is switched off

› After the vehicle is unlocked and the door opened

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.
› The object is approaching at a very high speed.

Settings

To display the system **activation/deactivation** menu, do the following:

1. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment screen.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Or:

1. Press 🚗 › P › ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Smart parking assistant

Use

The assistant is designed to automatically park the vehicle in a row of vehicles parked in parallel or perpendicularly.

Functionality

Smart parking assistant functionality:

› Finding suitable parking spaces.
› Automatic reversing into a parallel or perpendicular parking space.
› Automatic forward parking into a perpendicular parking space.
› Pulling out in front from a parallel parking space.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of a parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision during the parking manoeuvre, it applies automatic emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the collision.

Conditions

✓ No action of ASR.

✓ The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Switching on/off

› Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.

When the system is on, the symbol P PARK in the button is illuminated.

Or:

› Press > P > P on the Infotainment system screen.

Finding a parking spot

› Drive along the line of parked cars at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

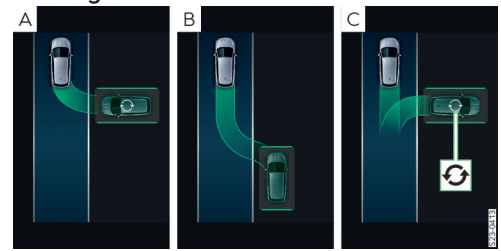
› When looking for a perpendicular parking space, drive at a speed of less than 20 km/h.

› When looking for a parallel parking space, drive at a speed of less than 40 km/h.

Before the parking manoeuvre

1. Once you have found a parking space, pull over and follow the instructions on the infotainment display.
2. If the system offers more than one parking space, select the preferred one by pressing it on the Infotainment display.

Parking manoeuvre variants



A Rear parking in a perpendicular parking space

B Rear parking in a parallel parking space

C Front parking in a perpendicular parking space

↻ Tapping the symbol – change parking mode

Parking manoeuvre

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

1. Tap *Start* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Monitor your surroundings and follow the instructions on the Infotainment system display.

I You can interrupt the parking manoeuvre at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. When the brake pedal is released, the parking manoeuvre will continue.

Terminating the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

› Pressing the P PARK button under the Infotainment system screen
› Tapping the P symbol on the Infotainment system screen
› By intervening in the steering
› By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

Automatic parking without searching for a parking space first

Forward parking:

1. Pull partially forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

1. Pull partially forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space.
2. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Rear parking:

1. Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

1. Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
2. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Leaving a parallel parking space

1. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

1. Tap P on the Infotainment system display.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Restrictions

In some countries, the smart parking assistant is restricted for legal reasons.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to leave using the Park Assist. A relevant message will appear on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
› If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
› The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
› Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  › Obstacles are moving.
  › The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  › The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.

› Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Park assistant with memory function

Use

The assistant enables automatic parking of the car along a pre-saved route to an parking space with no roof and then leaving the parking space using Rear Traffic Alert.

ⓘ The assistant does not allow parking or leaving the parking space from a covered parking area due to the unavailability of the GPS signal.

Functionality

Park Assist with memory function allows you to store up to 5 parking spots that you can automatically park into or out of repeatedly.

The system stores the location and name of the parking space in memory.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of the stored parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision, it applies automatic emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the collision.

Conditions

- ✓ No action of ASR.
- ✓ GPS signal is available.
- ✓ The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

Switching on/off

› Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.

When the system is on, the symbol P PARK in the button is illuminated.

Saving a parking spot

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake and leave the ignition on.
3. Press the P PARK button under the Infotainment system.
4. Press + ★ on the Infotainment system screen.
5. Use the displayed keypad to name and save the parking spot.

Parking in a stored parking spot

1. At a distance of up to 70 m from the stored parking spot, drive at a speed of less than 45 km/h towards the parking spot.
2. Once the system detects the route to the stored parking spot, follow the instructions on the Infotainment system screen.

When the parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding message will be displayed and an acoustic signal will sound.

Leaving a stored parking spot

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Tap the P PARK button under the Infotainment system and then on the Infotainment system screen.

Interrupting the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

› Pressing the P PARK button under the Infotainment system screen
› By intervening in the steering
› By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

ⓘ You can interrupt the parking manoeuvre at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. When the brake pedal is released, the parking manoeuvre will continue.

Restrictions

In some countries, Park Assist with memory function is not available for legislative reasons.

If parking is not possible using the memory function of Park Assist, a message will appear on the Infotainment system display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
› If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
› The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
› Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  › Obstacles are moving.
  › The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  › The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.
  › Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

High-voltage system

High-voltage system and battery

What you should be mindful of

High-voltage warning labels







Warning labels are placed on components with high electrical voltages.

⚠ DANGER

Improper handling of the high-voltage system and battery can cause fatal electric shock, burns, or injury.

- Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and the high-voltage system is energized. This applies even when the electric drive is switched off and the ignition is switched off.
- Do not touch or handle the components of the high-voltage system. These include, for example, the high-voltage cables and the high-voltage battery.
- Do not carry out any work on the high-voltage system and battery.
- Only qualified service technicians may work on the high-voltage system and systems affected by it.
- Do not open or repair components of the high-voltage system.
- Do not modify, disassemble or disconnect orange high-voltage cables.
- Do not open, modify or disassemble the high-voltage battery cover.
- Damage to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery may result in the release of toxic and flammable gases. Open the windows to vent escaping gases and leave the vehicle.
- Avoid contact with liquids and gases escaping from the high-voltage battery.
- In case of fire, leave the vehicle and keep a safe distance. Inform the emergency services that the vehicle has a high-voltage battery » *page 42, After an accident*.

⚠ CAUTION

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if the chassis is struck on the road or in an accident, for example.

- Have the high-voltage battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time with a discharged high-voltage battery, the high-voltage battery may be irreversibly damaged.

- A discharged high-voltage battery must be charged immediately!

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is left off the road for several months, the high-voltage battery may self-discharge.
This can lead to damage to the high-voltage battery at high ambient temperatures and low state of charge.

- Always ensure a sufficient state of charge of the high-voltage battery!

Overview

The high-voltage system in the vehicle consists of the following main components:

- High-voltage battery
- DC/DC converter
- Power electronics
- Electric motor
- High-voltage air conditioning compressor
- High-voltage battery charger
- Charging socket
- Orange high-voltage cables and connectors
- High-voltage heater

ⓘ The high-voltage battery is located under the floor of the vehicle and is not accessible to the user.

Troubleshooting

High temperature of the high-voltage battery – fire hazard!


illuminates together with ⚠
Fire hazard report, continuous acoustic warning
A horn may sound in a parked car.

1. Stop the car immediately, taking into account the current traffic situation!
2. Park the vehicle in a safe place, preferably in an open area, well away from buildings, other vehicles and flammable objects.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
4. Select the **P** mode with the automatic gearbox selector.
5. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
6. Switch off the ignition.
7. Keep the vehicle key in a visible place, e.g. on the centre console, for the emergency services.
8. Exit the vehicle and make sure that no persons or animals are left in the vehicle.
9. Move away with the passengers to a safe distance from the car and the road, e.g. behind a guardrail.
10. Report the accident immediately to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
11. Do not try to fix the problem yourself!

ⓘ When a fire hazard is reported, charging and other functions may be terminated.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!
In case of fire, poisonous and inflammable gases may be released.
Components of the high-voltage system may be live.
› Leave the vehicle and stay well away from it.

The continuous acoustic warning can only be deactivated by a specialist garage. We recommend that you have it deactivated by a Škoda service partner.

Electric drive system fault


illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.


illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Overheated electrical system


Illuminates together with
Message indicating overheating of the electrical system

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
2. Do not top up the coolant!
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Range

What affects the range

The range depends mainly on the driving style and the selected driving mode. It is therefore recommended not to drive too fast and not to accelerate too rapidly » page 193.

It also depends on the climatic conditions and on the way the comfort appliances are used, especially the air conditioning.

Therefore it is recommended that, especially in cold weather, the vehicle is parked in a garage or the interior temperature of the vehicle is raised in one of the following ways before driving to reduce the consumption of comfort appliances at the start of the journey:

› Set up delayed charging with interior preheating » page 254.
› Set the interior to preheat with independent air conditioning if the vehicle cannot be connected to the mains » page 110.

If the car is new, the range estimate is inaccurate. It is necessary to drive approximately 500 km with your usual driving style. This gives the car enough information to calculate a more accurate range estimate.

Plan your journey wisely. Use the range calculator on the Škoda website.

After you enter your destination in the navigation system, the range value is recalculated based on the selected route data.

https://go.skoda.eu/range-calculator

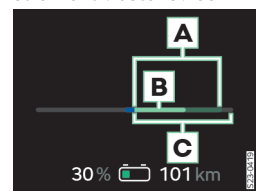
Driving performance availability

Use

The driver needs to know the available driving performance when it is necessary to accelerate, e.g. when overtaking.

Overview

The regenerative braking progress indicator is shown on the instrument cluster screen.



A Currently available driving performance
B Currently used driving performance
C Maximum possible driving performance

Currently available driving performance

The currently available driving performance is the maximum possible range of performance available at a given moment of driving. The currently available driving performance is only available for a limited time!

Maximum currently available driving performance can be used, for example, to accelerate the vehicle when overtaking.

The currently available driving performance depends, for example, on the following factors:

› Ambient temperature
› High-voltage battery charge level
› High-voltage battery temperature
› High-voltage battery wear

⚠ WARNING
Danger of accident due to the limitation of maximum speed and acceleration.
› Always adapt your driving style to the currently available driving performance.

Currently used driving performance
Currently used driving performance is that used by the car at a given moment of driving.

Maximum possible driving performance
Maximum possible driving performance is only available if the following conditions are met:

› Optimum high-voltage battery temperature
› High charge level of the high-voltage battery
› The the high-voltage battery is not worn out

Troubleshooting

Limited driving performance when the high-voltage battery i low
illuminated
Message of limited driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 130 km/h.

› Charge the high-voltage battery.

If you do not charge the high-voltage battery, the driving performance will further decrease and will be insufficient to operate the car.

Insufficient driving performance when the high-voltage battery i low
illuminated
Message of insufficient driving performance, warning tone

A risk of the car stopping in traffic.

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 7 km/h.

Convenience functions, such as air conditioning, are limited.

› Drive with extra caution to the nearest charging station or park the car in a safe place and seek help from a professional service.

Limited driving performance when the temperature of the high-voltage battery i very low
illuminated
Message of limited driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 130 km/h.

› Continue driving to allow the high voltage battery to warm up.

Insufficient driving performance when the temperature of the high-voltage battery i very low
illuminated
Message of insufficient driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 7 km/h.

Convenience functions, such as air conditioning, are limited.

Driving performance will increase after the high voltage battery is warmed up. You can heat the high-voltage battery in one of the following ways:

1. Connect the car to the charging station for about 10 minutes.
2. Turn on the ignition.

Or:

1. If the traffic situation allows, drive for approximately 10 minutes.
2. Stop the car, turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

After this, proceed as follows:

› If the indicator light goes off, the temperature of the high-voltage battery is sufficient.
› If the indicator light is still on, repeat the warming up process of the high-voltage battery.

If departure is planned in cold weather conditions, we recommend preheating the interior using independent air conditioning.

Charging

General information on charging

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!

› Follow the correct charging procedure. Do not disconnect the charging cable during charging.
› When operating a charging station, follow the instructions provided on the charging station.
› Never charge in places where there is a risk of explosion. Components of the charging cable can cause sparks and thus ignite explosive fumes.
› Only charge from professionally installed and undamaged electrical sockets in a faultless wiring system. Have the electrical sockets and wiring checked regularly.
› Connect the charging cable to an electrical outlet that is protected from moisture and liquids.
› Do not use the charging cable together with an extension cord, multiple mains socket, adapter or timer.
› Do not use damaged charging cables.
› Protect the connectors of charging cables and power sockets from moisture and liquids.
› Do not work on the vehicle while it is being charged.
› Always disconnect the charging cable before switching on the ignition. Replace the protective cap and close the vehicle's charging socket cover.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fire and damage to the vehicle!

› Do not charge several vehicles at the same time from one socket circuit.
› Ensure that the maximum power load capacity of the socket circuit is observed. If other appliances draw power from the same socket circuit while charging, the socket circuit may be overloaded and the charging process may be terminated.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of irreversible damage to the high voltage battery.

› If you do not use the vehicle for an extended period of time, charge the high-voltage battery after four months at the latest.

The first charging and charging after a long period of idling

If the high-voltage battery is new or has not been charged for a long time, the maximum state of charge can only be reached after repeated charging. This is not a fault.

Recommended charging instructions

NOTICE

Failure to follow these recommendations will result in increased ageing and wear of the high-voltage battery.

The high-voltage battery is subject to natural ageing and wear during use. Proper handling helps to maintain capacity and life over the long term. It is therefore recommended to observe the following instructions:

- Use the Battery Care Mode function » page 254.
- Only charge the high-voltage battery to 100 % before a long journey. To do this, use delayed charging (charging for the time of departure) » page 254. Once fully charged, drive off as soon as possible.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle idle for long periods of time when the high-voltage battery has a high level of charge.
- If the vehicle will be parked for a long period of time, leave the high-voltage battery charged from 40 % up to 70 %.
- Avoid completely discharging the high-voltage battery, e.g. due to long periods of leaving the vehicle idle with a low state of charge. Set the lower battery charge limit to at least 20 %.
- Charge the high-voltage battery mainly with alternating current (AC).

When fast charging with direct current (DC), the charging power is very high. Frequent fast charging (DC) can permanently reduce the capacity of a high-voltage battery.

- If possible, avoid leaving the vehicle in high outside temperatures for long periods, especially in direct sunlight.

If the charge level of the high-voltage battery is low after the ride, we recommend starting charging immediately after the ride.

During charging, functions that reduce the charging rate, such as air conditioning or seat heating, may be unavailable or limited.

Overview

Charging options

- Public charging station – alternating current (AC) » page 251
- Public fast charging station – direct current (DC) » page 252
- Home fast charging station – alternating current (AC) (Wallbox) » page 251
- Mains sockets – alternating current (AC) » page 251

Charging from a home charging station (Wallbox) results in higher charging power and shorter charging times than charging from a mains socket.

For information on charging options, refer to the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/home-charging

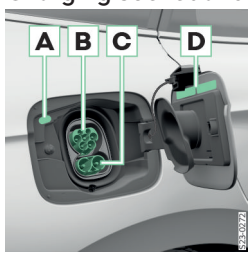
For information on how to purchase a suitable home charging station (Wallbox), contact your Škoda Partner.

NOTICE

The installation of the home charging station (Wallbox) must be carried out by a qualified technician.

- Before installing the home charging station Wallbox, have your wiring checked.
- Have the wiring and the home charging station Wallbox checked regularly by a qualified technician.

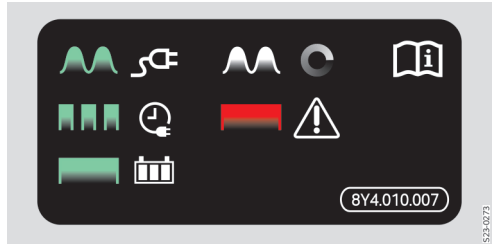
Charging socket and indicator light



- **A** Charging indicator light
- **B** Charging socket (AC)
- **C** Charging socket (DC)
- **D** Labels:
  - Charging indicator light label
  - Charging compatibility information label » page 250, Technical data and specifications

The indicator light is also used to illuminate the charging socket. It is illuminated white, e.g. when the vehicle is unlocked or parked and the charging socket housing is opened.

Charging indicator light label



The high-voltage battery is charging.
Indicator light pulses in green.

Postponed charging has been activated, charging has not yet started.
Indicator light flashes in green.

High-voltage battery is charged, charging has been terminated.
Indicator light is green.

The connector has been plugged into the charging socket and the connection between the vehicle and the charging point is being established.
Indicator light pulses in white.

A problem detected » page 249
Indicator light is red.

Restrictions

The charging time is affected by the following factors:

- Climatic conditions

› High-voltage battery temperature
› High-voltage battery charge status
› Charging power supplied by the charging station or an electrical outlet

Due to the physical characteristics of the high-voltage battery, its ability to store energy changes and the charging slows down in the following cases:

› During prolonged parking in very cold climatic conditions
› As the level of charging increases

Troubleshooting

Problems signalled by the indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket

illuminated

1. Unplug the connector and reinsert it into the charging socket as far as it goes.
2. If the problem persists, check the following:
   › The charging station or cable is connected to the mains and does not indicate any warnings or error messages.
   › You are properly authorized if the charging station requires it.
   › The cable is connected and properly secured in the charging socket.
   › The vehicle does not indicate any error messages related to the high-voltage system.
3. If these are correct and the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

3x 1x pulses green three times and then red once

Due to a fault, the connector in the charging socket is not secured and the vehicle is being charged in an emergency with a significantly lower charging current.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low charge level of the high-voltage battery

illuminated

› Charge the high-voltage battery.

Charging does not start or is interrupted

A message is displayed stating that charging is not possible.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it.

   Or:

   Use another charging option.
2. If charging does not start or is interrupted again seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

DC fast charging is not possible

A message is displayed stating that fast charging is not possible.

1. Charge the high-voltage battery with AC current.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging time is extended

If the high-voltage battery is too hot after driving, the system can reduce the charging current during subsequent charging to protect the high-voltage battery from overheating. This will increase the charging time.

1. Make sure that the charging current (AC) is not set to a reduced level in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 254, or in the charging device (Wallbox, universal charging cable).
2. Make sure that the indicator light in the charging socket does not indicate a fault.

Charging is terminated unexpectedly

1. Check the charging status on the main charging settings screen in the Infotainment system » page 254, to see if the set upper charge limit has already been reached.
2. In the event of an error message, check the charging station or try another charging station.

The connector cannot be detached

The connector is too hot.

A message on the overheated connector will appear on the instrument cluster screen.

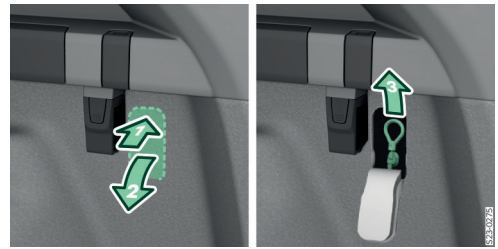
› Wait for the connector to cool down.

Or:

The locking system of the charging socket has failed.

1. Release the charging cable using the mechanical release » page 250, Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket



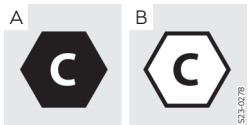
If the connector remains locked in the charging socket after charging has been completed and the button has been pressed, proceed as follows:

1. Press with your fingers on the perforated part on the right-hand side of the inner luggage compartment lining.
2. Pull the perforated part outwards.
3. Pull carefully on the eyelet.
4. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.
5. Have the vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

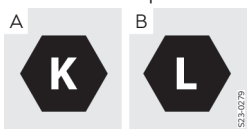
Information labels

The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



Designation of the AC charging connector type

- A A label on the vehicle and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the vehicle
- B A label on the charging station and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the charging station (if the cable is not part of the charging station)



Designation of the type of DC charging connector on the vehicle and on the charging cable connector

- A Voltage up to 500V
- B Voltage up to 920V

High-voltage battery capacity

With respect to the technology used, the nominal (gross) capacity of the high-voltage battery is always higher than the total usable (net) capacity.

Charging with alternating current(AC)

Operation

Charging with alternating current (AC):

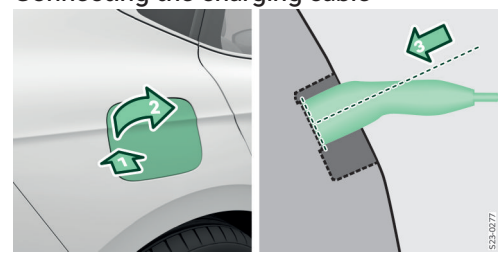
- › Home charging station (Wallbox)
- › Public charging stations
- › Charging sockets

Before charging

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Switch off the ignition.

   Switched on ignition can increase the charging time.
3. If you are not charging from a charging station with an integrated charging cable, connect the charging cable to the socket of the charging device or to the mains socket.
4. Fully unwind the charging cable.

Connecting the charging cable



1. Unlock the car and push on the charging socket cover.
2. Open the charging socket cover.

   The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.
3. Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.
4. Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted straight and all the way in.

   The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

› If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The display in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Interrupting charging and restarting charging

1. Press the button for terminating charging immediately in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 254.

   Charging is interrupted. The connector remains secured in the charging socket.
2. To restart charging, tap the instant start button in the Infotainment system » page 254.

Charging automatically stops

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically. When the automatic release option for the charging cable connector is selected » page 254 the connector is released and remains unlocked. Otherwise, it remains locked and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

Manual termination of charging

› Press the button on the key.

Charging is interrupted, the connector is unlocked for 30 seconds and can be removed.

After 30 seconds, the connector will re-lock and if the upper battery charge limit has not been reached, charging will continue.

Or:

› Follow the instructions on the charging station.

The connector remains locked in the charging socket and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

The indicator light in the charging socket lights green.

After charging

1. If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.
2. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.
3. Close the charging socket cover.
4. Alternatively, remove the charging cable from the charging device or from the power socket.

If you leave the charging cable connected to the mains after charging, the appliances in the car do not discharge the high-voltage battery, but are powered from the mains.

Charging with direct current (DC)

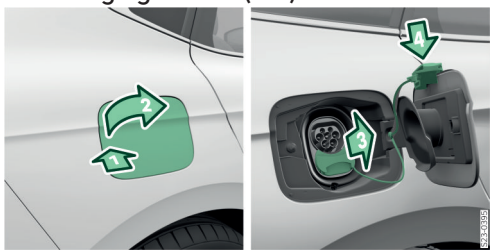
Operation

Options of charging with direct current (DC):

› Public charging stations

When charging, a higher charging power is achieved and the charging time is significantly reduced.

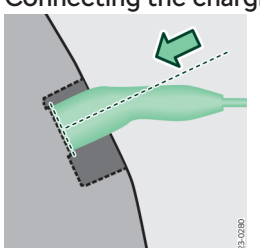
Opening the cover and removing the cover cap of the charging socket (DC)



1. Unlock the car and push on the charging socket cover.
2. Open the charging socket cover.

   The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.
3. Remove the lower cover cap of the charging socket (DC).
4. Replace the lower charging socket (DC) cover cap on the charging socket cover.

Connecting the charging cable



1. Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.
2. Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted all the way in.

   The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

› If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The screen in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Charging automatically stops

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically. The connector is unlocked in the socket and can be removed.

Manual termination of charging

› Follow the instructions of the station.

When charging is complete, the connector will be automatically released. The indicator light in the charging socket lights green.

Or:

› Press the button for terminating charging in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 254.

Charging will be terminated. The connector will automatically unlock in the socket.

To start charging again, you must remove the connector and then start the charging process from the beginning.

After charging

1. If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.
2. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.

3. Replace the charging socket cap.
4. Close the charging socket cover.

Charging set-up

Functionality

Tools for setting up charging

› Charging set-up in the Infotainment system » page 254, Overview

› MyŠkoda application » page 177

Information on the delayed charging setting

Applies only to alternating current (AC) charging.

Proper functionality depends on compatible infrastructure.

If a departure time with charging is set, charging will start in a delayed manner so that it is completed at the set departure time. If a charging time range is also set, charging takes place preferentially in this time range.

If, after connecting the vehicle to the charging device, the charge level is lower than the set low charge limit, charging will start immediately at the set limit regardless of the delayed charging.

If the departure time is too early for charging to be fully completed, the high voltage battery will not be charged to the desired level at the time of departure. The charging rate depends on the infrastructure used and its settings.

If you need to leave earlier than the set departure time:

1. Change the departure time in the Infotainment system menu or in MyŠkoda application.

   Or:

   Press the button to start charging immediately in the Infotainment system menu or in MyŠkoda application.
2. Check that the vehicle has started charging.

Conditions for starting delayed charging

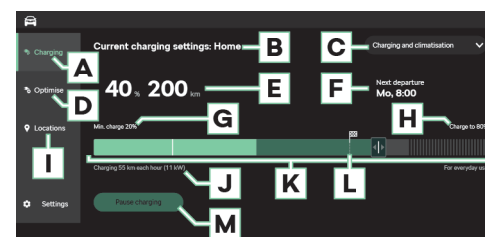
✓ The vehicle is connected to a charging device that allows delayed charging.

✓ Delayed charging is activated in the charging settings » page 254.

Overview

Displaying the main charging menu

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the > menu in the Infotainment system.



A Charging screen with presets and information

B Selected charging point

C Charging mode options (the range depends on the selected charging point)

› Instant charging

- › Charging for the departure time
- › Charging and air conditioning for the departure time
- › Charging at preferred times
- › Bidirectional charging
- › Discharge
- › Charging with current from solar panels

D Charging optimisation

E Charging status and range

F Overview of the preset preferences

G Lower charge limit

H Upper charge limit

I View a selection of charging points » *page 257*

J Current charging speed

K Charge status indicator

L Power consumption indicator during scheduled journey using navigation

M Pause charging/Resume paused charging

Charging optimisation

The function is used to preheat the high-voltage battery to the optimal temperature for direct current (DC) charging.

› In the Infotainment system, tap > > > *Start battery heating*.

You can use this function especially when charging the car in cold weather conditions.

Other charging settings

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.

You can enable or disable the following functions from the displayed preset:

- › Battery Care Mode
- › Bidirectional charging
- › Reducing AC charging current (applies to unsaved charging points)
- › Automatic unlocking of the AC charging cable connector (applies to unsaved charging points)
- › Plug & Charge
- › Setting automatic stops for charging
- › Optimisation of fast charging during active route guidance

Battery Care Mode

The Battery Care Mode function helps to extend the life of the high-voltage battery by automatically setting the upper charge limit depending on the high-voltage battery temperature.

You can increase the charge level on a one-time basis (e.g. before a long trip).

If delayed charging is set, Battery Care Mode will not lower the upper charge limit but the vehicle will be charged the value set for the departure time.

Bidirectional charging

The bidirectional charging function allows you to:

- › Store electrical power in the car's high-voltage battery
- › Take electrical power from the car's high-voltage battery, e.g. to a home battery storage

Operating conditions:

✓ The charging station (Wallbox) allows charging with direct current (DC).

- ✓ The charging station (Wallbox) supports bidirectional charging and is compatible with the vehicle.
- ✓ The (Wallbox) charging station is saved as the » page 257 charging point.

Setting-up two-directional charging:

1. Tap > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. In the menu of charging modes, select the bidirectional charging mode.

ⓘ The bidirectional charging function is set by default in the charge range of 20–80 %.
We therefore recommend setting the lower charge limit to a higher value than the standard 20% so that the high-voltage battery is not discharged to 20% of its capacity when using bidirectional charging.

ⓘ When using bidirectional charging, the departure preset can only be set in the charging station (Wallbox).

ⓘ The use of the high-voltage battery as an energy source is limited to an operating time of 4000 hrs or a drawn electrical energy of 10,000 kWh (whichever occurs first).
Once the limit has been reached, the high-voltage battery can no longer be used as an electrical energy source.
You can find current information on the remaining operating time and the remaining amount of electrical energy to be drawn, as well as further information on bidirectional charging, in the > > > *Bidirectional Charging* menu of the Infotainment system.

ⓘ If discharging mode is selected in the vehicle, the charging station (Wallbox) will only draw electrical energy from the high-voltage battery.

Charging with current from solar panels

Charging with current from solar panels allows you to use the spare capacity of the car's high-voltage battery to store unused electricity from the solar panels.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The charging station (Wallbox) supports charging with current from solar panels and communicates via the ISO 15118-2 protocol extended by VAS (Value-Added Services), e.g. Škoda Charger.
- ✓ The (Wallbox) charging station is saved as the » page 257 charging point.

Plug & Charge

The Plug & Charge function allows user authorisation at the charging station without the need for additional accessories (e.g. RFID card/chip or mobile application).

The user authorisation takes place automatically when the charging cable is connected to the vehicle. The cost will be charged to the charging contract (e.g. Powerpass), that the user has selected in MyŠkoda application.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The charging station supports the Plug & Charge function.
- ✓ The activation of a valid Plug & Charge contract for your vehicle is confirmed in MyŠkoda application.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The Plug & Charge application is activated in Infotainment.

If the Plug & Charge authorisation does not take place, proceed as follows:

1. Deactivate the function in the Infotainment system.

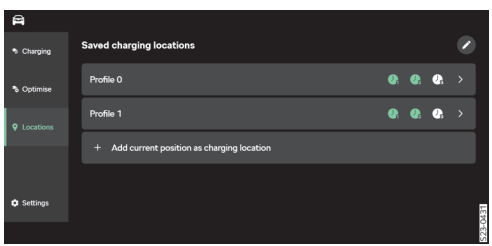
2. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it again after a while.
3. Authorise yourself at the charging station in another way.

More information on Plug & Charge can be found on the Škoda website.

https://go.skoda.eu/plug-and-charge

Setting up the charging points

In the following menu, you can set frequently used charging points and their parameters in the individual presets.



1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select a charging point and one of the charging point preferences.

   You can set or enable the following items from the displayed preset:

   › Departure time
   › Day/days of the week
   › Repeat on the selected day/days of the week
   › Reduced charging current
   › Setting the lower charge limit

   Charging starts immediately if the charge level falls below the set value.

   › Setting the upper charge limit
   › Preferred charging times
   › Automatic release of the charging cable connector
3. Activate/deactivate the selected preset.

ⓘ Settings saved at the charging point take precedence over settings in the main charging menu » *page 254*.

ⓘ The charging point can be renamed by tapping the ✎ symbol.

Charging cables

General information on charging cables

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by Škoda Auto. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

› Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Instructions for handling the charging cable

› Protect the components of the charging cable from undue stress such as being run over, dropped, pulled, broken or bent over sharp edges.

› When unplugging from the power outlet or charging device, do not pull on the cable, but only on the connector.

› Put on the protective caps after using the charging cable.

› Keep the components of the charging cable away from intense sunlight (external temperature must not exceed 50 °C).

› Do not immerse the charging cable components in water or expose them to snow or ice.

Before travelling abroad

In some countries there may be the following differences in the power grid:

› Different types of mains sockets.

› Different precautions in the event of a fault

› Different measures for protection against electric shock, e.g. earthed/ungrounded mains

🛈 In countries with an ungrounded power grid, the universal charging cable allows deactivation/activation of the protective wire monitoring *» page 264*.

Check that your charging cable is suitable for charging in the relevant country. If you are unsure about connectors and sockets, we recommend contacting your Škoda Service Partner.

Overview

Types of charging cables

› Charging cable (Mode 3) for charging stations with AC » page 261

› Charging cable (Mode 2) for standard charging sockets with AC » page 259

› Universal charging cable (Mode 2) for charging sockets with AC » page 262

Space for stowing the charging cables

› Space for stowing the charging cables » page 294

› Organiser in the luggage compartment » page 294

› Bag for stowing charging cables » page 307

Technical data and specifications

Information label on the charging cable connector

The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



C Designation of the AC charging connector type

Charging cable Mode 2

Overview



The charging cable can be used for charging from a regular mains socket with AC.

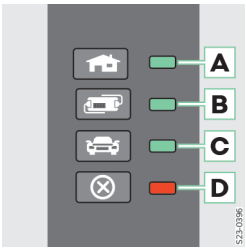
Technical data is provided on the cable label. The values may vary depending on the type of cable.

Control box

The control box ensures that the charging cable connector is de-energised until it is plugged into the car's charging socket.

When the charging cable is plugged into the charging socket, the control box automatically performs a self-test. In doing so, all the indicator lights will briefly light up.

Control box indicator light



A Indicator light of the connector plugged into the mains socket
B Control box indicator light
C Vehicle indicator light
D Warning light

illuminated
The charging cable is connected to the mains and ready for charging

illuminated, flashing
The high-voltage battery is charging.

illuminated
The charging cable is connected to the mains and to the car.
Charging has been terminated.

Monitoring the temperature

The charging cable is equipped with a temperature monitor in the control box and on the mains connector.

The temperature monitor is activated if the charging cable becomes very hot. This can be caused, for example, by transport in an overheated luggage compartment or by strong sunlight.

Troubleshooting

flashing, ⊗ illuminated
Charging is interrupted

There is probably a fault in the electrical network or in a standard mains socket.

1. Use another standard mains socket.
2. Have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.
3. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

flashing, ⊗ flashing
Charging current is reduced or charging is interrupted

Charging cable is overheated. There is probably a fault in the electrical network or in a standard mains socket.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and let it cool down.
2. Use another standard mains socket.
3. Have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.
4. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

flashing, ⊗ illuminated
Charging is interrupted

Control box fault.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

flashing, ⊗ flashing Charging current is reduced or charging is interrupted
Charging cable is overheated. 1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and let it cool down. 2. Plug in again into a standard charging socket. 3. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

flashing, ⊗ illuminated/flashing Charging is interrupted
Vehicle fault. › Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The control box can also evaluate the following situations as faults:

› A charger is connected to the car's 12V battery.
› The car is in close proximity to a high voltage line.
› The car is not standing on its wheels, but is lifted by a lifting device, for example.

Charging cable Mode 3

Overview



The charging cable can be used to charge your vehicle at public AC charging stations that do not have an integrated charging cable.

Technical data and specifications

Nominal power	20 A / 32 A
Mains voltage	250V (1-phase) / 480V (3-phase)
Mains frequency	50 Hz
Charging cable connector	type 2
Degree of protection	IP44.
Cable weight	3 kg
Operating ambient temperature	–30 °C up to +50 °C
Operating humidity	max. 95 %.

The data is provided in the instructions enclosed with the charging cable.

Universal charging cable Mode 2

Use

The universal charging cable can be used for charging from the following AC mains sockets:

› Standard charging socket
› Industrial socket

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by Škoda Auto. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

› Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.
› Do not use the charging cable with:
  › Extension cord
  › Cable drum
  › Multiple mains socket
  › Adapter
  › Timer switch

Warning symbols

Use the charging cable in a temperature range of -30 °C to +50 °C.

Use the charging cable up to 4,000 m above sea level

The charging cable is equipped with a switched protective wire.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

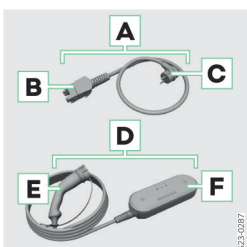
Do not use the charging cable together with extension and drum cables.

Do not use the charging cable together with multiple outlets.

There is a risk of electric shock if used incorrectly.

Observe the related operating instructions, especially the warning and safety instructions.

Overview



- A Replaceable power cable
- B Replaceable power cable connector
- C Connector for the mains supply
- D Charging cable with control box
- E Connector for the vehicle charging socket
- F Control box

Connecting and disconnecting the replaceable power cable » page 265.

Operation

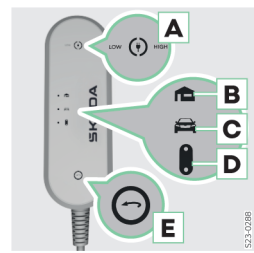
Control box

The control box ensures that the charging plug is de-energised until it is plugged into the car's charging socket.

When connecting the charging cable to the mains socket, all the indicator lights on the control box will briefly light up red.

When the charging cable is plugged into the charging socket the control box automatically performs a self-test. In doing so, all the indicator lights will briefly light up and gradually go out.

Control box indicator light



- A On/Off button with indicator light and charging current limit function
- B Indicator light of the connector plugged into the mains socket
- C Vehicle indicator light
- D Control box indicator light
- E Reset button with indicator light

Control box indicator light

illuminated
The charging cable is connected to the mains and ready for charging

pulsating
The high-voltage battery is charging.

Fault indication » page 265.

Settings

The following functions can be set on the control box:

› Charging current limitation
› Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

Charging current limitation

Charging current limitation is used, for example, to prevent the charging cable from overheating.

› Hold the button for at least 2 seconds.

After the charging current value has been set, the indicator lights , and flash.

The set reduced value (LOW) is displayed to the left of the button.

The set unreduced value (HIGH) is displayed to the right of the button.

The universal charging cable is preset at the factory for a reduced charging current. The next time the cable is used, the last set value is used.

Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

In the case of an ungrounded electrical network, a protective conductor error message is displayed, disable its monitoring as follows:

1. Hold down the and buttons, until the indicator light flashes six times.
2. Hold down the and buttons, until the indicator light flashes six times.

If the electrical network is grounded, activate the protective wire monitoring:

› Hold down the and buttons, until the indicator light flashes six times.

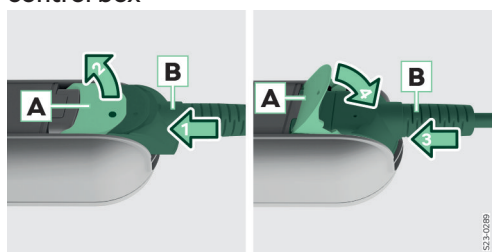
The and indicator lights go out and pulses.

Connecting and disconnecting the replaceable power cable

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!
The following conditions must be met before handling the cables:
› Charging cable must be disconnected from the vehicle's charging socket.
› Replaceable power cable must be disconnected from the power socket

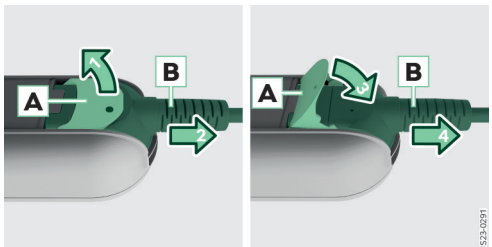
Plugging the replaceable power cable into the control box



1. Partially insert the B connector into the control box.
2. Remove the A cap.

3. Push the B connector all the way in.
4. Replace the A cap.

Disconnecting the replaceable power cable from the control box



1. Remove the A cap.
2. Partly pull the B connector out.
3. Replace the A cap.
4. Pull the B connector out completely.

Troubleshooting

pulses, ● illuminated
The mains plug is overheated, the charging current will be limited. After cooling down, charging will continue without restriction. › If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, ● illuminated
This may be caused by connecting a multi-phase socket as a single-phase socket. It is recommended to have the electrical grid checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, ● illuminated
The mains power socket is overheated, the charging current will be limited. After cooling down, charging will continue without restriction. It is recommended that you have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, ● flashes
Power grid is unstable, charging is interrupted. Once the power grid has stabilised, charging will resume. It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

illuminated, ● flashes
Overvoltage in the mains power grid, charging is interrupted. › Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds. It is recommended to have the electrical grid checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, ● flashes

The power grid protection wire is broken or missing.

› If the power grid is grounded, seek the assistance from a specialist garage and have the power grid checked by a specialist.
Or:
› If the power grid is not grounded, deactivate the protective wire monitoring » page 264.

illuminated, ● flashes

The power grid is incorrectly connected, charging is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

illuminated, ● illuminated, flashes

The control box has detected a faulty current, charging is interrupted.

1. Press the button for several seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

pulses, ● illuminated

The control box is overheated, the charging current will be limited.
After cooling down, the error is automatically rectified and charging continues.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, ● illuminated

The control box is overheated, charging is interrupted.
After cooling down, the error is automatically rectified and charging continues.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, ● flashes or is illuminated

Control box fault, charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

illuminated, illuminated, flashes

Control box fault, charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

flashes, illuminated

Serious control box fault, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

pulses, illuminated

Protection wire monitoring deactivated.

› If the power grid is grounded, activate the protective wire monitoring » page 264.

illuminated, flashes

Fault in the vehicle charging system, charging is interrupted. After the vehicle charging system has stabilized, charging will resume.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, illuminated

Fault in the vehicle charging system, charging is interrupted.

1. Stop charging, disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, flashes

Charging cable fault, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, illuminated

Malfunction of the indicator lights, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, illuminated

Malfunction of the indicator lights, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

Charging cable with control box (without replaceable power cable)

Cable option (power)	7.2 kW	11 kW
Nominal power	32 A / 1phase	16 A / 3phase
Mains voltage	100–240 V	
Mains frequency	50 Hz / 60 Hz	
Overvoltage category (EN 60664)	II	
Built-in RCD	type A – AC 30 mA / DC 6 mA	
Connector for the vehicle charging socket	type 2	
Protection class	I	
Degree of protection	IP55.	
Cable weight	3 kg	
Operating ambient temperature	–30 °C up to +50 °C	
Operating humidity	5 % – 95 %	
Operating altitude	max. 4000 m above sea level	

Some technical data is provided on the charging cable label.

Replaceable power cable

The following technical data is provided on the cable:

- Mains voltage
- Nominal power
- Degree of protection

Space under the bonnet

The bonnet

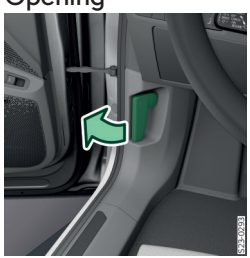
Opening the bonnet

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.

› Keep all persons well away from the area under the bonnet.

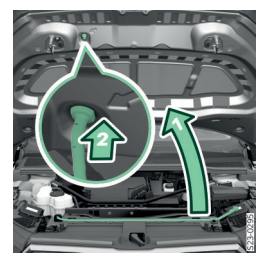
Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dashboard.



› Release the safety catch and lift the bonnet up.



1. Remove the strut from the holder.
2. Insert the end of the strut into the hole in the bonnet.

Closing

1. Lift the bonnet.
2. Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
3. Fold the bonnet down and release it from a height of 20 cm.
4. Check that the bonnet is closed.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not push against the bonnet when it is not closed properly, there is a risk of its deformation.

› Open and close the bonnet again.

Troubleshooting

Snow in the space under the bonnet

In cold climates, snow can accumulate in the area under the bonnet in certain conditions. The melted snow can then create a pool of water under the vehicle. This is not a fault.

Coolant

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Ignition off

Checking the fill level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the **MIN** mark, top up the coolant.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the area under the bonnet!

› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refuelling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

› Do not open the coolant filler cap immediately after stopping the vehicle and switching off the ignition.

1. Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
2. Refill with coolant with the correct specification.

3. Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) coolant to top up.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

 illuminated or flashing – coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low

› Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct:

› Check or change the radiator fan fuse » *page 280*.

If the fuse is OK, but the indicator light lights up again or flashes:

› **Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.**

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant replaced by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

1. Do not continue driving.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery and fuses

12V vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12V battery


Wear protective goggles!


The acid in the 12V battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.


Keep fire, sparks and naked flames away from the 12V battery! Do not smoke!


A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when the 12V battery is charged!


Keep children away from the 12V battery!


Follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual!

Protection against discharging the 12V battery

Automatic system-related discharge protection for the 12V battery

› Switches off certain consumers or restricts their use of power

Causes of the 12V battery discharging

› Worn 12V battery

› Low temperatures

› Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

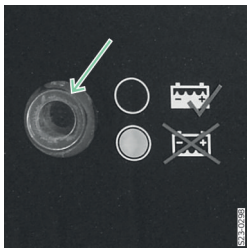
Checking and charging the 12V vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The specialist garage checks the condition of the 12V battery during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12V battery with an acid level indicator.



› Tap on the indicator before testing to clear air bubbles.
› Black – the acid level is OK.
› Colourless or pale yellow – the acid is too low, the 12V battery must be replaced.

Charging

The 12V vehicle battery is automatically charged when the high-voltage battery is charged.

If necessary, the 12V vehicle battery can be charged with a 12V charger.

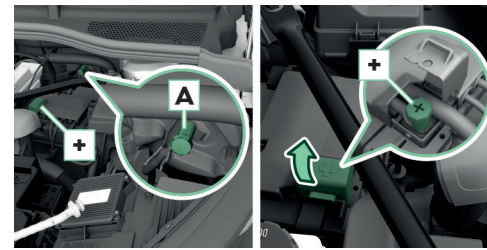
Requirements for charging a 12V battery

✓ Ignition off
✓ Power consumers switched off

The process of charging a 12V battery

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!
› To charge the 12V battery, set a max. charging current at 0.1 times its total capacity until fully charged.



Under the bonnet: Earth point and ⊕ charging pole

A Earth point
+ ⊕ charging pole of the 12V vehicle battery (under the cap)

1. Tilt the ⊕ pole cap out.
2. The charger terminal ⊕ must be connected to the ⊕ pole.
3. Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the A earth point.
4. Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
5. After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
6. Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12V battery.
7. Close the ⊕ pole cap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› Hydrogen is released during charging. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12V battery.
› Do not "quick charge" a 12V battery yourself, have it done by a specialist garage.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!
› A flat 12V battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

12V vehicle battery charging fault


illuminated
Indication on the instrument cluster screen of the 12V vehicle battery charging fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.


illuminated
Indication on the instrument cluster screen of the 12V vehicle battery charging fault

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery fault


illuminated
A message on the instrument cluster screen about a 12V vehicle battery fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Insufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery


illuminated
Indication on the instrument cluster screen of a weak or discharged 12V vehicle battery

1. Turn on the ignition. High-voltage battery starts charging the 12V vehicle battery

   Or:

   Drive a distance of several km to recharge the 12V vehicle battery.

   Or:

   Charge the high-voltage battery. The 12V vehicle battery will be charged at the same time as the high-voltage battery.

   Or:

   Charge the 12V vehicle battery with the charger.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Self-help

The 12V battery is located in the space under the bonnet . The 12V vehicle battery may only be disconnected and connected by a specialist garage.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the high-voltage system!
› Do not change, dismantle or disconnect the 12V vehicle battery. Improper handling can damage the high-voltage battery.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

NOTICE

The use of an unsuitable 12V car battery will invalidate the type approval.

› When replacing a 12V car battery, it is necessary to use only a 12V car battery designed for your car. We recommend using a 12V car battery from the range of Škoda original parts.

Using jump start cables

Use

A vehicle with a discharged or defective 12V vehicle battery can be put into operation using jump start cables connected to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

› Do not jump start the car with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12V vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12V vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.
  › The acid level in the 12V vehicle battery is too low » page 272.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

Nominal voltage of both vehicle batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged 12V vehicle battery.

Self-help

Using another vehicle's 12V vehicle battery to start the vehicle

WARNING

Risk of injury! Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Position the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment

NOTICE

Risk of short circuit

› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.

› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12V vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.

› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connecting the jump start cables

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Connect the terminals of the jump start cables of the discharged 12V vehicle battery and the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery as shown below.

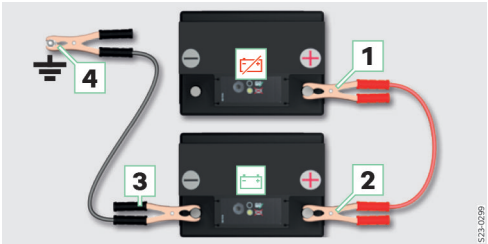
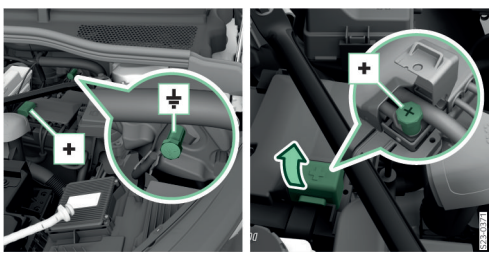


Illustration of the wiring diagram

1 ⊕ pole of the discharged 12V vehicle battery
2 ⊕ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery
3 ⊖ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery (or earth point)
4 ⏚ earth point in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery



Under the bonnet: Earth point / ⊕ 12V vehicle battery pole (under the cover)

Putting the vehicle into operation

1. Start the engine of the assistance vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with an internal combustion engine).

   Or:

   Switch on the electric drive of the assistance vehicle (applies to a vehicle with an electric motor).
2. Switch on the ignition in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery.

   If the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery is not ready to drive within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cables

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with higher-rated fuses.
› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
› We recommend using replacement fuses from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.
› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

🛈 One fuse may serve several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

ⓘ NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuses can cause damage to electrical equipment!

› Protect the fuses from dirt and moisture.

High voltage system fuse (for rescuers)

The high-voltage system fuse is marked with an orange sticker so that rescuers can disconnect the high voltage in the vehicle as quickly as possible.

⚠ WARNING

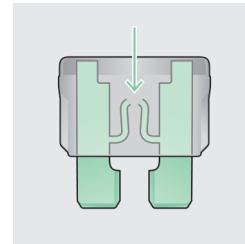
Danger of life-threatening injury or electric shock and risk of severe burns!

› Do not change the fuse of the high-voltage system yourself!

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ The driver's door open
- ✓ All consumers switched off

Removing and inserting



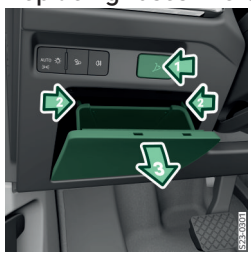
🛈 Use the appropriate end of the clamp based on the fuse dimensions.

› Replace the fuse by means of the clamp located under the fuse box cover in the space under the bonnet.

Fuses in the dash panel

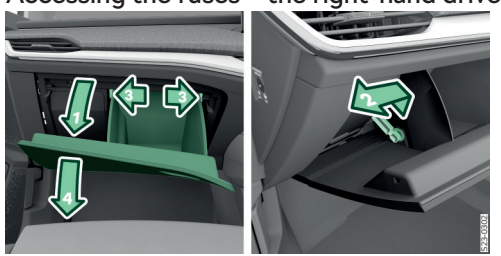
Overview

Replacing fuses – left-hand drive



1. Press the button to open the box by the driver.
2. Press and hold the latches.
3. Tilt the box out.
4. Replace the fuse.
5. Close the fuse box.

Accessing the fuses – the right-hand drive



1. Open the glove compartment on the passenger's side.
2. Release the box brake pull pin.
3. Press and hold the latches.
4. Tilt the box out.

Replacing fuses – right-hand drive



1. Open the fuse box cover.
2. Replace the fuse.
3. Close the fuse box cover.
4. Fit and secure the brake pull pin.
5. Close the fuse box.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	230V power socket
2	Airbags

Fuse number	Consumer
3	Towing bracket
4	Front camera for assist systems
5	Exterior lighting of the rear of the vehicle
6	Interior lighting, front grille lighting
7	Front seat heating
9	Window controls (left side of the vehicle), central locking (left side of the vehicle), left wing mirror (heating, folding, glass position adjustment), electric child lock (left side of the vehicle)
11	Towing bracket
13	Central locking (rear doors and boot lid), windscreen washers, headlight washers, headlights tilting function
14	Music amplifier
17	Rear radar sensors, Park Assist, Parking Aid
18	Steering wheel lock, KESSY (keyless locking), contactless operation of the electrically operated boot lid
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	Phone box, USB ports at the front
21	Rear view camera, area view system (Top View)
22	Engine control system
23	Communication system
25	Driver's seat belt tensioner

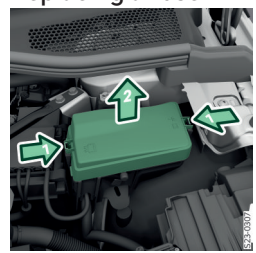
Fuse number	Consumer
26	Window controls (right side of the vehicle), central locking (right side of the vehicle), right wing mirror (heating, folding, glass position adjustment), electric child lock (right side of the vehicle)
27	Passenger's seat belt tensioner
28	High-voltage battery control system – safe disconnection of the high-voltage system The fuse may only be replaced by a specialist garage
29	Towing bracket
30	The Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
32	Exterior vehicle lighting, third brake light, registration plate lighting
34	Heating / air conditioning
35	Rear seat heating
36	Heating/air conditioning fan
37	Electrically operated boot lid
38	Seat ventilation
39	Steering wheel heating
40	Alarm system horn
41	Data bus
42	Gearbox control, gearbox mode display
43	Air conditioning at the front, air conditioning at the rear, rear window heating

Fuse number	Consumer
44	Front interior lighting, parking brake, rain and light sensor, lights control, alarm system, diagnostic socket, dashboard button panel.
45	Control lever under the steering wheel
46	The Infotainment system screen, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
52	12V socket in the boot
58	USB at the rear
59	Interior rear-view mirror with automatic darkening
60	Diagnostic socket
61	Drive system
67	Rear window heating

Fuses in the space under the bonnet

Overview

Replacing a fuse



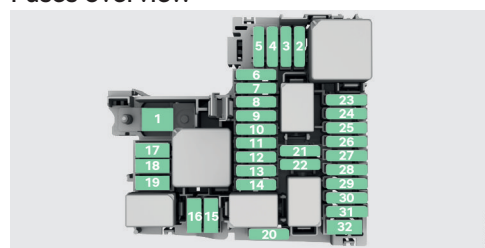
1. Press and hold the fuse latch.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Replace the fuse.
4. Fit the cover and click it into place.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

› Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
2	ESC assist system, the main relay coil
3	High-voltage battery charger, electric drive
4	Front left headlight
5	Front right headlight
6	Front radar sensor
9	Horn
10	Front wipers
11	Air conditioning + heating
12	Engine sound generator
13	ESC assist system
15	ESC assist system
16	Radiator fan
17	Windscreen heating
23	Engine control system
24	Radiator fan
25	Coolant pump, electric heater
26	Coolant pump, radiator grille
32	Brake booster

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.

› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.

› Clean the light-alloy wheels of gritty materials.

› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

› Incorrect tyre pressure

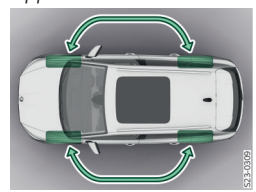
› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking

› Incorrect wheel alignment

› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes

Applies to vehicles with 125 and 132 kW electric motors.



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicles with 210 and 250 kW electric motors are fitted with different wheel sizes on the front and rear axle.

› Do not change the wheels on these vehicles.

Advice for tyre assembly

› With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.

› Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

› Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 235/55 R 19 101 T

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
19 Wheel diameter in inches
101 Load index
T Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg
105 925 kg
107 975 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

T 190 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

When checking the tread depth, all wear indicators must be checked.

A tyre is considered worn out if one or more wear indicators are flush with the tread.

ⓘ The tread depth can be measured with a gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Check the tread depth regularly.

› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 48 24 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 48. week in 2024.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

› Tyre repair kit » *page 289*

Tyre pressure change

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the Infotainment system, select the tire pressure in > > .

All-season or winter tyres

Use

All-season or winter tyres improve performance in winter weather conditions. They are identified by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tyre provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tyre manufacturer's sticker provides information about the grip on ice.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible performance, use tyres with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on ice-free roads without snow and at temperatures above 7°C.

Usage conditions

When using all-season or winter tyres with a lower speed category than the specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

1. In the Infotainment system, set the speed limit based on the category of tyres fitted.
2. Affix a warning label in the driver's field of view with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (only applies to certain countries).

Settings

Set the speed limit of the tyres in the following Infotainment menu in the following way:

1. Tap > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Tyres* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Tyres* and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Use

Snow chains improve handling the vehicle on icy or snowy roads.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and tyre damage

› Do not use chains on sections without snow and ice.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Remove the wheel covers before fitting the snow chains.

› Mount snow chains on the rear wheels only.

Technical data and specifications

Permitted rim and tyre combinations for mounting snow chains:

Rim dimensions	Tyre dimensions
8J×19 ET45	235/55 R19
8J×19 ET45	255/50 R19

Only use snow chains with links no larger than 9 mm, including locks.

SEAL tyres

Use

SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tyres, the vehicle must be equipped with tyre repair kit.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

› Spare wheel, jack and wheel bolt wrench are not included.

› If a tyre is damaged, use the tyre repair kit.

› If the damaged tyre cannot be repaired using the tyre repair kit, seek the assistance of a specialist garage or contact your breakdown assistance service.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before replacing the wheel

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

   Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. There must be no persons in the vehicle during the wheel change.
4. Close all doors, the boot lid and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

› The jack is not included in the vehicle equipment. To lift the vehicle, use a jack with a capacity corresponding to the maximum permissible weight of the loaded vehicle.
› When lifting the vehicle, follow the instructions in the jack manufacturer's instruction manual.
› Always lift the vehicle with the doors closed.
› Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.
› Do not switch on the ignition of the lifted vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle
› Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

1. Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
2. In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

   The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.
4. Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.
5. Replace the damaged tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Do not grease or lubricate screws.
› Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

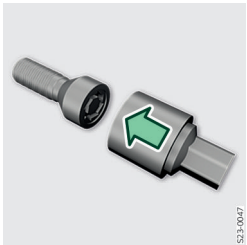
Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Before loosening the bolts

› If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » *page 292*.
› If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » *page 292*.

Instructions for a vehicle with anti-theft wheel bolts

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

Removing the bolts

⚠ WARNING

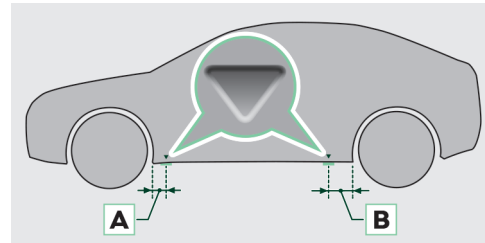
› If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



1. Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
2. Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.



A 20 cm

B 17 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

The jack is not included in the vehicle equipment.

To lift the vehicle, use a jack with a capacity corresponding to the maximum permissible weight of the loaded vehicle.

When lifting the vehicle, follow the instructions in the jack manufacturer's instruction manual.

1. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
2. Lift the vehicle so that the wheel is off the ground.

Replacing a wheel

1. Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
2. Carefully remove the wheel.
3. Fit the replacement wheel.
4. Contact tighten the bolts.
5. Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

This applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

1. Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
2. Refit the wheel bolt caps » page 292.

   Or:

   Refit the full wheel covers » page 292.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the Škoda Genuine Parts.

Tyre repair kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

› Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

› Do not remove a foreign object such as a screw or nail from a damaged tyre.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors, the boot lid and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

1. Place a speed limit sticker in the driver's view.
2. Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
3. If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.
4. If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!
Maximum compressor run time is 8 min.

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of getting burned!

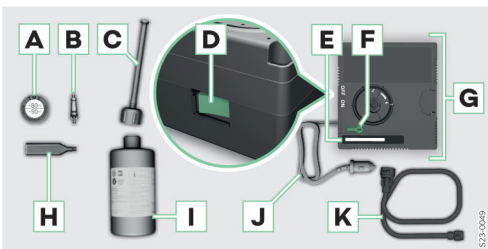
The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.

› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Overview

The kit is stored in a box under the carpet in the luggage compartment or in the right-hand side storage box in the luggage compartment.

Declaration of conformity is included with the compressor or in the on-board folders.



- **A** Speed limit sticker
- **B** Replacement valve insert
- **C** Filler hose with plug
- **D** Switch
- **E** Pressure indicator
- **F** Pneumatic pressure relief button
- **G** Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
- **H** Extension for removing and inserting the valve insert
- **I** Filling bottle
- **J** Plug for 12V socket
- **K** Tyre inflation hose

Restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

› The rim is damaged.
› Outside temperature is below –30 °C.
› The puncture in the tyre is larger than 4 mm.
› The side of the tyre is damaged.
› The expiry date on the filler bottle has passed.

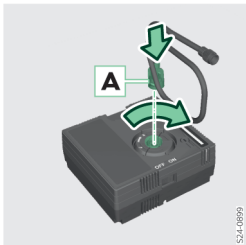
Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

1. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
2. Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
3. Shake the sealant bottle.
4. Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
5. Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.

6. Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
7. Remove the filler hose from the valve.
8. Screw on the valve insert.

Before inflating the tyre



1. Carefully remove the air hose from the rear of the compressor.
2. Insert the end of hose A into the compressor.

   The guide protrusions on the hose end must line up with the holes in the compressor.
3. Secure the hose in the compressor by turning it in the direction of the arrow.

Inflating the tyre

1. Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Turn on the ignition.
4. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
5. Switch on the compressor.
6. When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time specified by the kit manufacturer.
7. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
8. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
9. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

After inflating the tyre

1. Release the tyre air hose from the compressor by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow.
2. Remove the hose and return it into the back of the compressor.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
› Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.
› Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
› Adjust tyre pressure in the environment and at the ambient temperatures in which the vehicle will be operated.

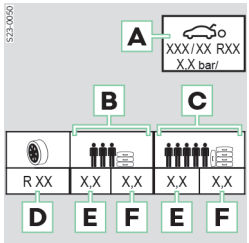
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Label with the specified tyre pressure values

The sticker for storing tyre pressure readings is located on the centre body pillar on the driver's side.



A Specified tyre pressure value for the temporary wheel

B Tyre pressure in case of partial load

C Tyre pressure when fully loaded

D Tyre diameter in inches

This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. It is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

E Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres

F Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitor indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Tyre pressure change alert

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the Infotainment system, select the tire pressure in > > .

Restrictions

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven wheel loading, e.g. driving with a trailer
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Mounted snow chains

Settings

Storing the tyre pressure

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the tyre pressure.
3. In the displayed Infotainment system menu, tap the function button.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

(!) flashes approx. 1 minute and then remains illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and on again.

   If the (!) indicator light flashes again after starting the engine there is a fault in the system.
2. Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Removing and installing bolt caps

Removing



1. Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
2. Remove the cover cap.

Installing

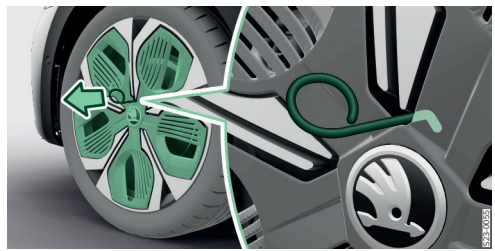
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full-width wheel cover

Removing and installing the trim

Removing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.



1. Put the bracket for removing the wheel trims behind the rim close to the centre.
2. Pull the centre of the wheel trim loose and remove the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.

1. Fit the trim to the wheel rim and gradually push the individual spokes of the trim until they are fully engaged.
2. Push the centre of the trim until it is fully engaged.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
2. Push the wheelbrace through the clamp, push on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

   When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

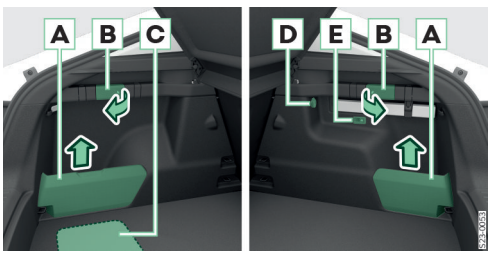
ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Luggage compartment equipment

Overview



A Removable storage box partition
Max. load 2.5 kg

B Rear seat backrest folding lever

C Under the carpet:
- Space for stowing the charging cables
- Organiser in the luggage compartment

D 12V socket

E Towing bracket switch

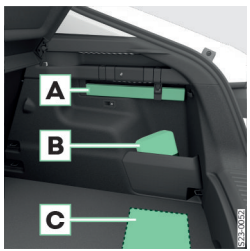
⚠ WARNING
Risk of injury!
Charging cables can be ejected from the luggage compartment in an accident.
- Stow the cables in the places provided for storing charging cables.

ⓘ NOTICE
- Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the space under the carpet.

Emergency equipment

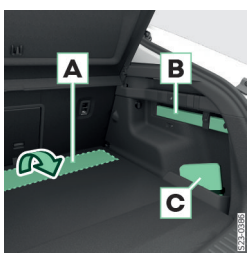
Overview

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



Option 1

- **A** Location of the warning triangle
- **B** Location of the first aid kit and the tool kit (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **C** Tool kit (depending on vehicle equipment)



Option 2

- **A** Tool kit
- **B** Location of the warning triangle
- **C** First aid kit location

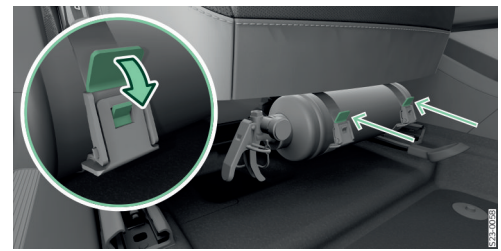
To access the on-board tools more easily, fold down the right rear seats and remove or insert the tools from the rear seat area.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the front and rear doors.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

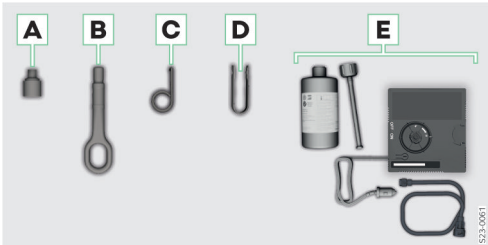
Only valid for certain countries.



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



- **A** Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- **B** Towing eye
- **C** Hook for removing the full wheel covers
- **D** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- **E** Tyre repair kit

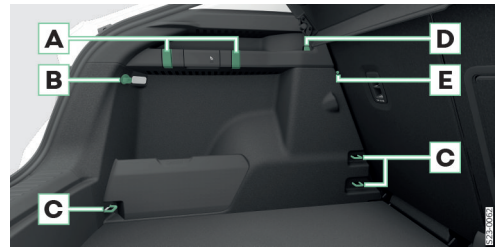
In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

NOTICE

› When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

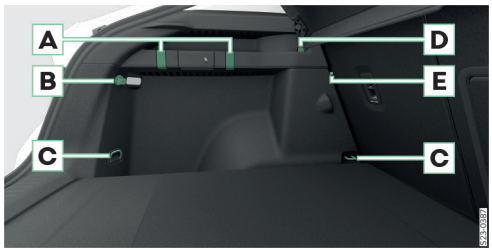
Fasteners in the boot

Overview



Option 1

- **A** Folding hooks for bags
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg
- **D** Bag hook
  Max. load 1.5 kg
- **E** Holder for securing the fastening nets



Option 2

A Folding hooks for bags
Max. load 7.5 kg

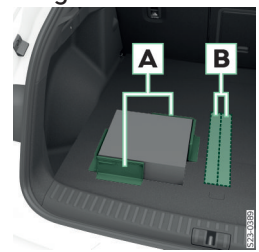
B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

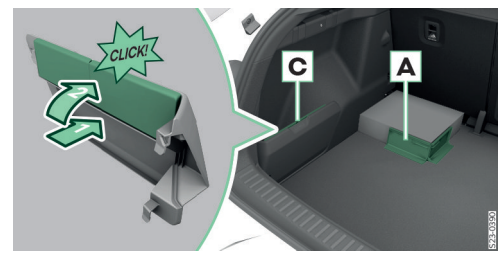
D Bag hook
Max. load 1.5 kg

E Holder for securing the fastening nets

Cargo elements



The variant with 2 Cargo elements



The variant with 1 Cargo element

A Cargo element
Max. load 8 kg

› Fold down the Cargo element and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

B Space for stowing the Cargo securing elements under the carpet in the luggage compartment

C Space for stowing the Cargo elements in the storage box.

Securing nets

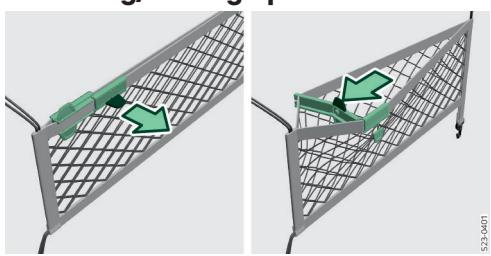
Overview



The maximum load is indicated on the label of each fastening net.

The location of the fasteners in the luggage compartment may vary depending on the vehicle equipment » page 296.

Unfolding/folding up



Luggage compartment carpet

Folding up and down

Maximum carpet load is 25 kg.



› Fold back the rear part of the carpet.



› Lift the carpet with two fingers at point A to release the rubber band.



› Attach the rubber band to the hook under the boot lid.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the hook!

› Only hang the floor covering on the hook.

› Before closing the boot lid, remove the floor covering from the hook.

Boot lid

Removing and inserting

⚠ WARNING

› Do not put any items on the rigid boot cover

Removing



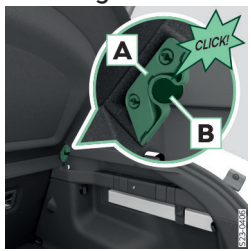
› Unhook the straps.



› Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.

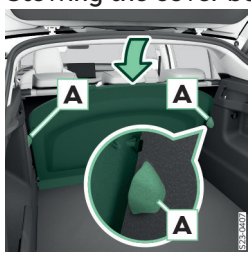
› Remove the cover.

Inserting



1. Insert the mount A opposite the holder B on both sides of the boot.
2. Press on the cover from above until it engages.
3. Hook in the retaining straps.

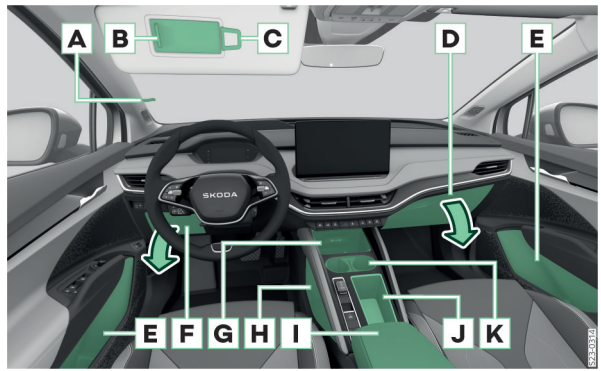
Stowing the cover behind the rear seats



› Slide the cover between the rear seats and the cover holder A.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Parking permit holder

B Make-up mirror

C Ticket holder

D Storage compartment

Applies to left-hand drive.

Max. load 3 kg

A card holder, a pencil holder and some space for coins are inside the storage compartment.

Applies to right-hand drive.

Max. load 1.5 kg

A card holder and coin holder are inside the storage compartment.

› Pull the handle to open the storage compartment.

E Storage compartment

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Space for waste container

› Storage compartment for reflective vest

F *Applies to left-hand drive.*

Storage compartment

Max. load 0.25 kg

A card holder is inside the storage compartment.

› Press the button to open.

G Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Phone box

› USB inputs

The USB inputs allow charging and data transfer.

H Storage compartment

I Adjustable armrest with a storage compartment

Depending on vehicle equipment, there is space for a tablet in the storage compartment, space for a bottle holder with a capacity of up to 0.5 l, a removable box and a lockable removable box.

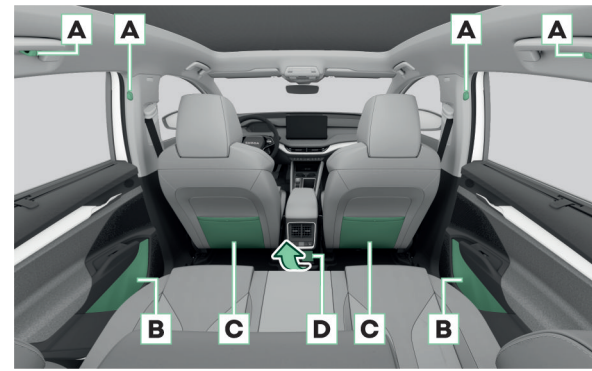
The removable box can be placed in the back of the storage compartment **H**.

J Storage compartment

K Cup holder

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook

Max. load 2 kg

B Storage compartment

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Storage compartment for reflective vest

C Storage pocket

› Storage pocket for a phone

D Depending on vehicle equipment:

› 230V power socket

› USB inputs

The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

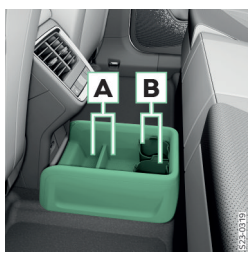
› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not put objects into the C storage pocked that may damage it.

Storage compartment behind the centre console

Overview



A Storage compartment

B Cup holder

Maximum storage compartment load is 1 kg.

There is a flexible cup holder in the storage compartment.

The holder can be folded to the edge of the compartment.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Removing and inserting

Inserting



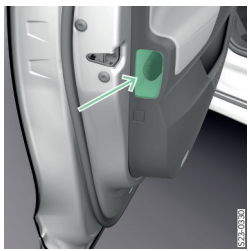
1. Insert the front of the compartment under the edge of the centre console.
2. Push the rear of the compartment all the way in.
3. Check proper locking of the compartment.

Removing

Removing is done in the reverse way.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

› Only insert a broom from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.

› Always insert the umbrella all the way into the storage compartment.

Phone box

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

› The phone may become warm; take care when removing it from the storage compartment.

› Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a hot metal object in the storage compartment, remove the phone and allow it to cool down in the storage compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to stored data!

› Do not leave identification cards, debit and credit cards with magnetic strips or chips in the phone's storage compartment.

Functionality

Phone box charges your phone wirelessly with up to 15 W of charging power.

It is located at the front of the centre console storage compartment. The phone box is located on the driver's side.

Insert a phone not larger than the space for the phone into the storage box.

Charging indicator

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.

› – charging is switched off.

› The symbol is not displayed – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged / the function is not available.

Switching charging off/on

1. Press > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select wireless charging for mobile devices.

Or:

1. Press in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen to switch charging on.
2. Select the item to switch on.

Recommendations for optimal function

› The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.
› Insert the phone without its protective case.
› Place the phone in the centre of the phone compartment.

Conditions

✓ Ignition is on.
✓ Phone supports the Qi standard.
✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system screen shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol is illuminated in the status bar.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Place the phone again in the centre of the phone compartment.
› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone compartment.

Cup holder

Overview

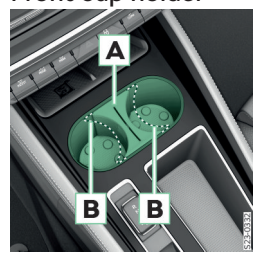
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder



A Adjustable part with card holder
B Extreme position of the adjustable part

The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Insert the adjustable part so that the side grooves are not visible.

Rear cup holder



› To open, flip the lid.



Ashtray

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns or fire!

› Do not use the ashtray to deposit hot or burning objects.

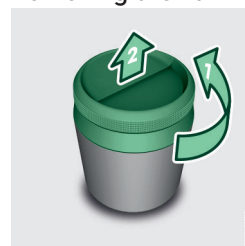
Operation

The ashtray is inserted into the cup holder.

Opening the ashtray



Removing the lid



Blanket

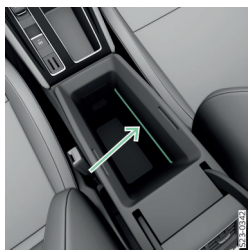
Removing and inserting

The blanket is stored in a bag that you can attach to any of the following locations:

› On the headrest guide bars on the front seats.
› In the storage pockets on the back of the front seats

Space for a tablet

Overview



› Secure the tablet with a rubber band.

12V power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical system

› Only use the sockets to connect approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off.

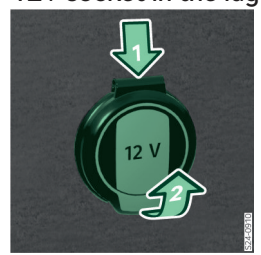
⚠ NOTICE

Danger of discharging the 12V vehicle battery by connected appliances!

The sockets work even when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

12V socket in the luggage compartment



› Hold the cap at the hinge point with your finger and lift it open.

230V power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the connected consumers!

› Do not connect a fluorescent lamp to the socket.
› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off.

Functionality

Charging indicator

› Illuminated green – the socket is switched on.

› Flashing green – the socket is still on approximately 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off if the appliance was connected before the engine was switched off.

ⓘ The socket is equipped with a child safety lock. By inserting the plug, the safety lock is released and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

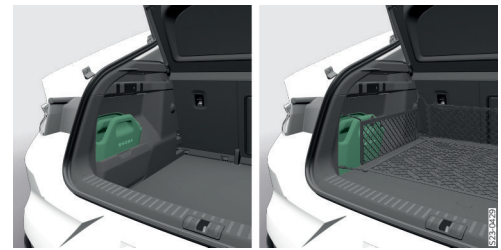
The warning light flashes red

The socket is switched off, e.g. for the following reasons:

› Excessive current load
› Low battery charge of the 12V vehicle battery
› Overheating of the socket
› If the socket does not switch on automatically after the above reasons have passed, disconnect the appliance from the socket and reconnect it after a while.

Bag for stowing charging cables

Overview



The maximum bag load is 3 kg.

You can put the bag in the storage compartment or secure it with a fastening net.

⚠ WARNING

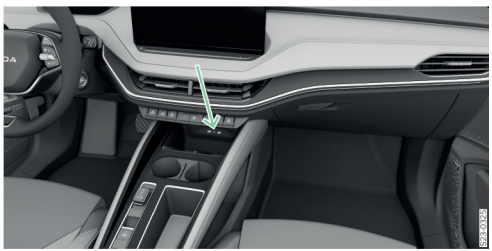
Risk of injury!
Charging cables can be ejected from the bag in an accident.
› Store the cables in the bag only when the rear seat backrests are properly secured in the upright position.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Put in the bag only the charging cables for the charging stations (Mode 3) supplied from the factory.
› Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the bag.

USB inputs

Overview



The USB inputs can be used for charging with up to 15 W charging power and for data transfer.



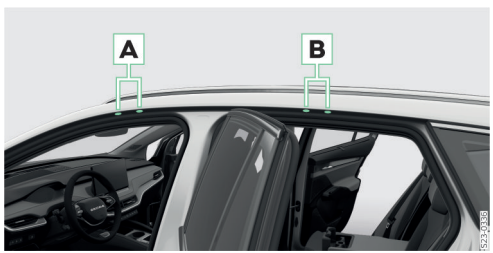
The USB inputs can only be used for charging with up to 15 W charging power.

Roof rack and the towing bracket

Roof rack

Technical data and specifications

Maximum weight of the load including the roof rack is 75 kg.



You can fix the roof racks to mounting points A and B in the bodywork.

› We recommend using roof racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Towing bracket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident, an incorrectly installed or unsuitable towing bracket may damage the high-voltage components of the vehicle, exacerbating the effects of the accident or causing fatal injuries.

› Considering the specific design of vehicles equipped with a high-voltage battery, we recommend using only towing brackets from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

› It is recommended that all related installation work is carried out by Škoda service partners.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not tamper with the tow bar release switch when a trailer or other attachment is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could come loose.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the towing bracket with care.
› Do not stand near the centre of the rear bumper when the tow bar is swinging out.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket!

› When the towing bracket is not in use, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

ⓘ The car's lighting and registration plate must always be visible.

› When the towing bracket is not in use, swing the tow bar under the bumper. On vehicles with a removable towing bracket, remove the towing arm.

ⓘ The retrofitted non-removable towing bracket must not obscure the car's lighting and registration plate.

› Observe the generally applicable legislation in force in your country.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the entire towing bracket is removed from the vehicle, it must be replaced with the original rear bumper reinforcement, which includes the towing eye sleeve.

Swinging the tow bar in and out

Swinging the tow bar out



› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will swing out. The ⇝ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Push the towing arm until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⇝ switch illuminates.

Swinging the tow bar in

ⓘ NOTICE

› No trailer or other accessories may be attached to the towing arm.
› There must be no plug or adapter plugged into the socket.



› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will release. The ⇝ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Swing the tow bar back under the bumper until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⇝ switch illuminates.

Coupling and uncoupling the trailer or accessories

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

⚠ WARNING

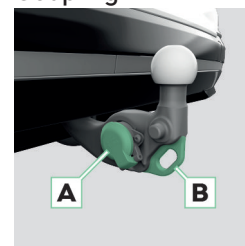
Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The towing bracket has an 13-pin socket . If the trailer has a 7-pin plug, use a reduction piece from Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Coupling



1. Swing the tow bar out.
2. Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.
3. Insert the trailer electrical plug into the socket **A**.
4. Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet **B**. The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electronic system!
Total power consumption of all appliances connected to the trailer's electrical network may be no more than 350 W

Troubleshooting

Towing bracket fault

The indicator light in the switch is not lit or flashing, or the tow bar cannot be locked.

1. Do not use the towing bracket.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Unsecured tow bar

illuminated

› Secure the tow bar.

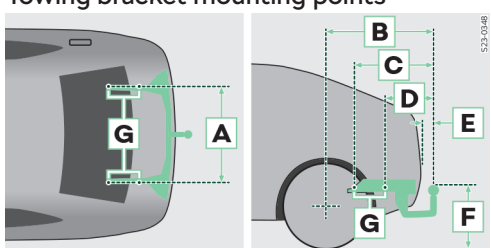
The tow bar has not come out

In extremely low outside temperatures, the tow bar may not fold out.

› If possible, park the vehicle in a warmer area, such as a garage.

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



A Mounting points spacing

B Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball

C Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

D Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

F Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

G Mounting points on the bodywork

Value in mm	
A	994
B	1098
C	630
D	410
E	at least 65
F	350 – 420

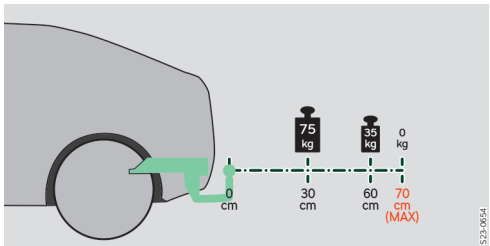
Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 75 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. In vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your Škoda Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing bracket, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories



When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

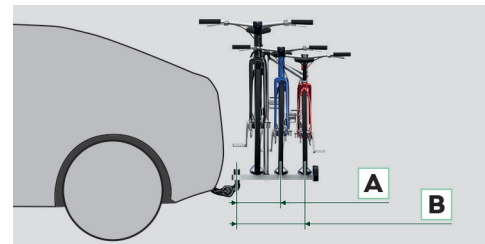
The total permissible weight of the mounted accessories, including the attached load, is max. 75 kg and varies depending on the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the tow ball.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the tow ball	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

Using the bicycle rack

Škoda Auto recommends that the number of bicycles loaded on the rack should be in accordance with the following table:

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball specific for the vehicle	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
from 75 kg	75 kg	3



Loading of the bicycle rack and maximum length to the bicycle racks

A Maximum length 500 mm when 2 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 55 kg

B Maximum length 700 mm when 3 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 75 kg

› We recommend using bicycle racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.
› To reduce air resistance and load, we recommend removing baskets, bags, child seats and batteries from the bicycles.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball.
› Do not exceed the permissible weight of the trailer or other accessories, e.g. bicycle rack.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket and the vehicle itself!
› When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maintenance and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster screen.

The service intervals are based on standard operating conditions.

Under adverse operating conditions, we recommend you to carry out some work before the next service date or between the specified service intervals.

In case of uncertainty about previous work before the scheduled service interval, contact a professional service.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service intervals, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the Škoda Auto warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

We recommend that you have the document about the performed service inspection printed out by a specialist garage.

Displaying the service due date

› In the Infotainment system, select > > > *Service*.

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Škoda Service Partner

All Škoda authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda genuine parts

We recommend using Škoda Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by Škoda Auto. These parts are fully compliant with Škoda Auto regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

Škoda Auto is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Škoda genuine accessories

We recommend that you use Škoda Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, Škoda Auto is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a Škoda Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Component protection

Some electronic components of the car (e.g. the instrument cluster) are equipped with component protection at the factory, which limits the functionality of these components when they

are installed illegally in another car (e.g. after theft) or when operated outside the car. Component protection allows a qualified service technician to install or replace components and control units.

If a component protection message appears on the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system screen, contact a qualified workshop. Škoda Auto recommends using the services of a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda Prepaid service

Applies to the Czech Republic

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.

› Do not use steam, aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents. Solvents can permanently damage airbag modules

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Microfibre Suedia / Textile

ⓘ NOTICE

› Remove any dirt as soon as possible.

› Do not use leather conditioners, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover, etc. on microfibre Suedia or synthetic leather upholstery.

› Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.

› Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

› If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

ⓘ

› Leather and microfibre Suedia materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.

› Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.

› Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel!

› Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

› Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.

› Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!

› Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.

› Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

› Do not dry clean the seat belts.

› Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Microfibre Suedia / Textile

› Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.

› Remove fresh stains with a cotton or woollen cloth slightly moistened with water, or with a weak soapy solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.

› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.

› When taking care of textiles and microfibre Suedia surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a special cleaning glove. Remove any pilling with a brush.

Plastic parts

› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system

› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents designed for this purpose.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Instrument cluster screen

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Head-up display

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1].

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

⚠ NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, street and sea salt residues, etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

⚠ NOTICE

› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
› Do not treat matte painted parts with polish or hard wax.
› Do not polish foils.
› It is recommended to treat door seals and window guides with appropriate products from Škoda original accessories intended for this purpose. These ensure that the protective paint layer on the seals and window guides is not damaged.
› Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the rod of the roof antenna, etc.
› Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

⚠ NOTICE

If the vehicle needs to move freely in the car wash, the following conditions must be met before entering:

✓ Ignition on
✓ Automatic gearbox selector in **N** mode

---

[1] A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

✓ Electric parking brake is switched off
✓ Deactivated Auto Hold function

ⓘ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

› Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with wax protection

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Washing with a pressure washer

ⓘ NOTICE

› Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.
› Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  › Components of the high-voltage system, e.g. charging socket, high-voltage cables, etc.
  › Space under the bonnet
  › Films
  › Lock cylinders
  › Gaps on the vehicle
  › Towing bracket socket
  › Tilting towing arm
  › Camera lenses and sensors
  › Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

ⓘ NOTICE

› Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
› Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
› Only move the scraper in one direction.
› Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
› Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
› Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Cleaning charging cables

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

› Only clean the charging cable after disconnecting it from the vehicle and the charging point.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the charging cable!

› Water must not get into the contacts of the charging cable.
› Wipe the charging cable with a dry cloth.
› For heavy soiling, use a damp cloth without any detergent.
› If you do not use the charging cable for a long time, clean it before using it again.

Instructions for cleaning

High Voltage System Instructions

› Stop charging and close the charging socket.
› Switch off the ignition.

› The components of the high-voltage system must not be damaged, e.g. the orange cables.

Hand washing

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
› Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights[1].
› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
› Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
› Do not use any solvent-based cleaners, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects on the wiper blades as they will damage the graphite layer of the blades during cleaning.
› Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
› Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.
› Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
› The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60°C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Protect the paint at least twice a year with hard wax.
› Use a polish for paint that has turned matte.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

› sunlight
› moisture
› air pollution
› stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.
› We then recommend treating the spot with hard wax.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

---

[1] A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Towing bracket

› If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact the specifications and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Concise Declaration of Conformity

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by law.



Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

- in the space under the bonnet on the right
- on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturer

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN screen

VIN can be displayed in the Infotainment system under > > > *Service*.

Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Stickers and labels

Overview

From the factory, stickers and labels with important information for the operation of the car are placed on the engine compartment and on some parts of the vehicle.

› Never remove stickers and labels. They should remain legible.

Axle weights and loads

Maximum permissible weights are listed on the type plate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar.



A Permissible total weight

B Permissible total weight of the loaded combination of vehicles, if the vehicle is used for towing

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Payloads

Use the difference between the permissible total weight of the vehicle and the operating weight to find the approximate maximum payload weight.

The payload includes the following components:

› The weight of the passengers

› The weight of all luggage and other cargo

› The weight of the load on the roof, including the weight of the roof racks
› The weight of the equipment excluded from the operating weight
› Vertical ball head load when using a towing device » page 312

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident and vehicle damage!
› Do not exceed the specified values for the permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit.

Operating weight

Electric motor type	Operating weight (kg)
132 kW electric motor	2000
210 kW electric motor	2140/2222 a)
250 kW electric motor	2240
a) Applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.	

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification		Value (in mm)
Vehicle height at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	132 kW electric motor	1606–1621
	210 kW electric motor	1606–1621
	250 kW electric motor	1608–1618
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors		2002
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors		2148
Vehicle clearance at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	132 kW electric motor	167–182
	210 kW electric motor	167–182 / 166–181 a)
	250 kW electric motor	168–177
Vehicle length		4653
a) Applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.		

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, further referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during

a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, further referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which the accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

› The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
› The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
› Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
› The vehicle's speed

The recorded data allows how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident to be analysed. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

› Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
› Assistant for keeping your lane (Lane Assist)
› Park steering assistant
› Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age and location of the accident is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect the EDR content to other data sources to help identify the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment used to read the EDR data.

Škoda Auto will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions relating to personal data protection.

To view the current personal data protection statement, use the following link or load the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 25. 5. 2017 No. 355.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine.

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA company declares that the radio equipment type 013854 complies with the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available on the website at the following address: **http://www.hella.com/vw**.

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeoman Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial Škoda

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Israel

1.3 Israel – MoC, SII

55-10341: Conformity approval number of the Ministry of Communications

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

Due to the risk of radio frequency interference, changes to the equipment that could affect the wireless function of the equipment, including changing the software, replacing the original aerial, or adding the ability to connect to an external antenna, are prohibited without the approval of the Department of Communications.

Name of device: the Infotainment system screen

Manufacturer´s name: LG Electronics

Name and address of importer:

Champion Motors Ltd.

9 Halechi St.

Bnei Brak 51100

Israel

Model: LCW05-SKE5.

Country of production Vietnam

Brand: Škoda Auto a.s.

Taiwan

Radio equipment – Declaration of Conformity

Without a permit granted by the Directorate General of Telecommunications (DGT), no company, firm or user may change the frequency, increase the transmitting power or alter the original characteristics, functions or performance of an approved low-power radio frequency device. Low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect the safety of aircraft or interfere with legal communications. If it does, the user must immediately stop operating the equipment until the interference is removed. Legal communication means radio communication operated in accordance with the Telecommunications Act. Radio frequency equipment with low transmitting power has to be sensitive to interference caused by legal communication or devices transmitting radio waves in the ISM bands.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the Škoda website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market.
- Information on the Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 25 . 5. 2017 No. 355.
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers.

To view the information, use the following link or load the QR code:

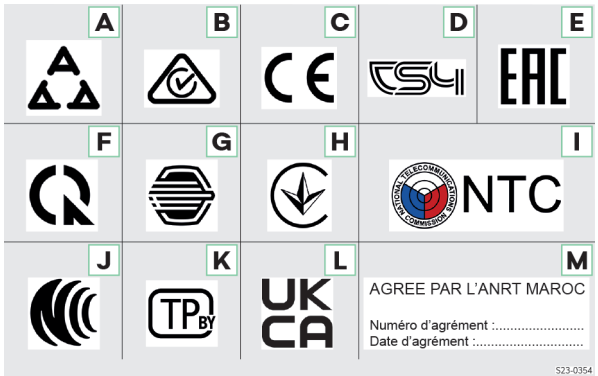
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



- **A** Serbia
- **B** Australia and New Zealand
- **C** Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- **D** Armenia
- **E** Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
- **F** Vietnam
- **G** Mongolia
- **H** Ukraine
- **I** Philippines
- **J** Taiwan
- **K** Belarus
- **L** Great Britain
- **M** Morocco

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Central locking remote control key	433.05–434.79 MHz	10 mW
	6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2–868.4 MHz	25 mW
	868.7–869.2 MHz	24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2–868.4 MHz	25 mW
	868.7–869.2 MHz	24 mW
Keyless car locking	125 kHz	76 dBµA/m
		89 dBµA/m

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
The Infotainment system	MW (AM): 531–1602 kHz	–
	FM: 87.5–108 MHz	–
	DAB: (BAND III): 174.928–239.2 MHz	10 dBm
	Bluetooth: 2402–2480 MHz	20 mW
	Wi-Fi: 2402–2482 MHz	15 dBm
	Wi-Fi: 5170–5250 MHz	15 dBm
	Wi-Fi: 5735–5875 MHz	15 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	128 kHz	15 W
NFC	13.56 MHz	100 mW
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76–77 GHz	23.38 dBm
	24.050–24.25 GHz	<20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52–1.7 MHz	–
	FM: 87–108 MHz	–
	DAB: 174–240 MHz	–
	GNSS: 1559.052–1605.375 MHz	–

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W
	GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz)	UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W
	WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	
	WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz)	LTE: 23 dBm/ 0.2 W
	LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz)	
	LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620–2690 MHz)	
	LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz)	
	LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791–821 MHz)	
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
	Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Virtual cockpit: FPK Entry	125 kHz	-2.5 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Collection and processing of scrap cars

Ecological disposal

As the car contains a range of potentially hazardous substances, it must be disposed of at the end of its life in accordance with local legislation. Hand over the car for environmental disposal only to an authorised body. For more information, please contact any Škoda Partner.

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end user, you have a legal obligation to take used batteries to a collection point.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

› Used batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner in EU member states and other countries.
› High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol.

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

› Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
› You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Product recycling

The following instructions apply to France.



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of items:

› Car keys
› Remote control of independent heating and ventilation
› Compressor
› Charging cable
› Card with mobile key



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of item:

› Fire extinguisher



The recycling instructions in the image apply to documents, packaging or bags for the following items:

› Owner's manual
› Car first aid kit

› Fire extinguisher
› Compressor
› Charging cables
› Charging socket and sealing cap
› Tool kit
› Tyre repair kit
› Warning triangle
› Reflective vest
› Tool bag

🛈 Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Some terms in this Manual have an ® or a ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

› **“Android Auto™”** is a registered trademark of theGoogle Inc company.
› **“Apple CarPlay™”, “Siri®”** are registered trademarks of the Apple Inc company.
› **“Bluetooth®”** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc company.
› **“HDMI, logo HDMI”** are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
› **“Windows®”** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Preparation for breathalyser

The vehicle is equipped with a preparatory kit for the installation of an alcohol tester LIN with bus communication corresponding to EU 2019/2144 standard.

Have the alcohol tester installed by a specialist garage.

Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your Škoda Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new Škoda vehicle, Škoda Genuine Parts and Škoda Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible Škoda Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is properly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN) in the “Vehicle handover documentation” section in this document.

Škoda Warranty for new vehicles

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, Škoda Partners provide you with the Škoda new vehicle warranty (hereinafter referred to as the “Škoda Warranty”) under the following terms and conditions.

Under the Škoda Warranty, Škoda Partners provide the following benefits[1]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the Škoda Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.
- Free repair of the high-voltage battery if the defect occurs within 8 years or before the mileage of 160,000 km/100,000 miles is reached (whichever comes first) from the start of the Škoda Warranty.

  A reduction in the capacity of a high-voltage battery over time is a natural manifestation of technology and is not a defect within the meaning of the Škoda Warranty (it is natural wear and tear), provided that this value, as measured by a Škoda Service Partner, does not fall below 70 % of its original total usable capacity before 8 years or 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Warranty.

  The total usable capacity of the high-voltage battery at the start of the Škoda Warranty is stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (hereinafter referred to as “the original total usable capacity”).

  The start of the Škoda Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a Škoda Partner to the first buyer who is not a Škoda Partner[2].

  Škoda Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any Škoda Partner can notify you of this date on request.

  Fault rectification under the Škoda Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the defective parts. This also applies to the high-voltage battery and its components. It is up to the Škoda authorised workshop to decide how the defect should be rectified. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the Škoda authorised workshop.

  If a defect within the scope of the Škoda Warranty is manifested in the form of an excessive reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery, the total usable capacity of the battery shall reach at least the following level after the defect has been rectified:

---

1) In some countries, Škoda Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the Škoda Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, refer to the purchase contract with your Škoda Partner or the accompanying Škoda documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the Škoda Warranty can only be exercised with Škoda Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

- 78 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle before 3 years, or before the mileage of 60,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- 74 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 3 to 5 years, or before the mileage of 100,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- 70 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 5 to 8 years, or before the mileage of 160,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda Warranty.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

Škoda Warranty can be claimed at any Škoda authorised workshop operating in the country where Škoda electric cars are sold by Škoda Partners. You can find an overview of these countries on the Škoda Auto website. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the Škoda Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of Škoda Auto, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the Škoda Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to an expert servicing workshop or was not properly rectified without undue delay.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, bulbs, 12-volt vehicle batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by Škoda Auto (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, besides other things, ignoring the warning lights and warning messages of the car, failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time, or failure to follow the instructions for charging the high-voltage battery.
- Use of the car's high-voltage battery as a stationary source of electrical power, except for the “Bidirectional charging” function, provided that a home charging station – Wallbox (DC) designed for this functionality and approved by Škoda Auto is used.
- Exposing the high voltage battery to water or other liquids.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This Škoda Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the Škoda Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the vehicle.

Škoda Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the Škoda authorised workshop, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the Škoda authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the Škoda Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the Škoda Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your Škoda Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional Škoda Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a Škoda Extended Warranty with your new vehicle, Škoda Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

the Škoda Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the Škoda Extended Warranty, the conditions of the Škoda Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the Škoda Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the Škoda authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty, the warranty against corrosion of the body and the high-voltage battery warranty are unaffected by the Škoda Extended Warranty.

The Škoda Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the Škoda Extended Warranty, contact your Škoda Partner.

ⓘ The Škoda Mobility Guarantee and the Škoda Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

Specifications of electric motors and high-voltage accumulators

132 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	62/58
Power (kW)	132
Highest torque (Nm)	310
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.7

210 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	82/77
Power (kW)	210
Highest torque (Nm)	545/- a) b)
Maximum speed (km/h)	180
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.7/6.6 a)

a) Applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.

b) The values were not available at the time of going to press.

250 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	82/77
Power (kW)	250
Highest torque (Nm)	- a)
Maximum speed (km/h)	180
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	5.4

a) The values were not available at the time of going to press.

Simply Clever

230V power socket and USB inputs

Overview

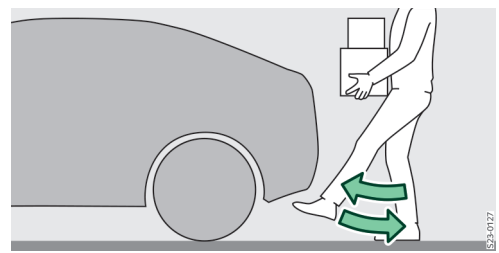


The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

For further details, see » page 306.

Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation

Overview



For further details, see » page 61.

Cargo elements in the luggage space

Overview



The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

For further details, see » page 296.

Rear door window shades

Overview



For further details, see » page 56.

Parking permit holder

Overview



Cup holder

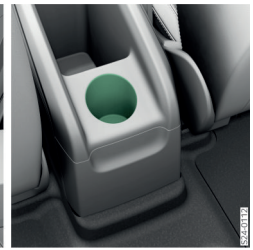
Overview

Front cup holder



Rear cup holder





For further details, see » *page 304*.

Cup holder with the Easy Open function

Overview



For further details, see » *page 304*.

The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment

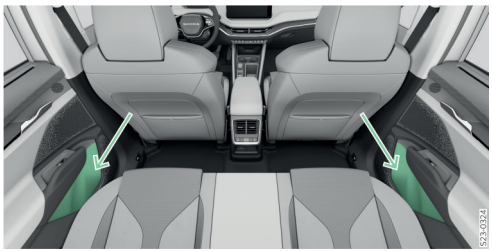
Overview



The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment

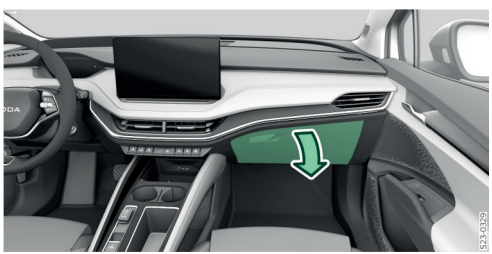
Overview

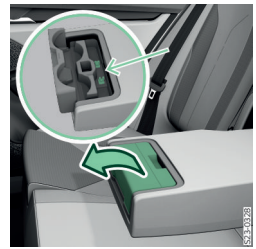


The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

Pencil holder

Overview





Child safety lock on the rear doors

Overview



For further details, see » *page 54*.

Boot lid – with electric operation

Overview

The lid handle



The button in the lid



The button in the door



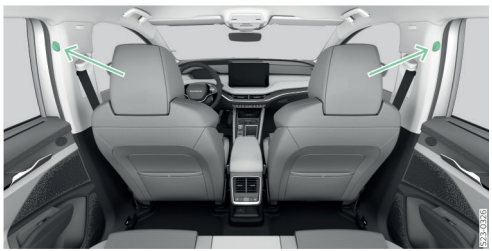
The button on the key



For further details, see » *page 59*.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar

Overview



The maximum hook load is 2 kg.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

Overview



The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Rear armrest

Overview

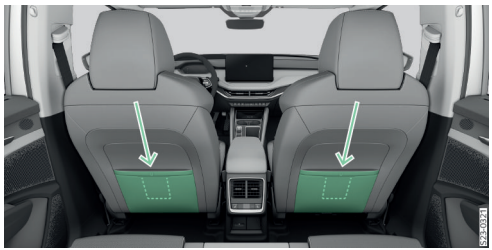


The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

For further details, see » *page 69*.

Phone pocket

Overview



For further details, see » *page 301*.

Storage tray for a card on the driver's side

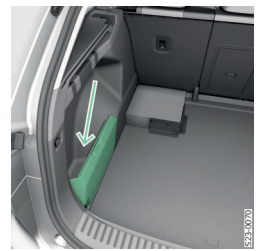
Overview



For further details, see » *page 300*.

Storage compartment with Cargo elements in the luggage area

Overview

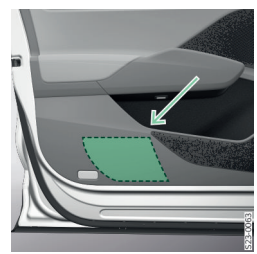


The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

For further details, see » *page 296*.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

Overview



Storage compartment behind the centre console

Overview



Maximum storage compartment load is 1 kg.

There is a flexible cup holder in the storage compartment.

The holder can be folded to the edge of the compartment.

For further details, see » page 302.

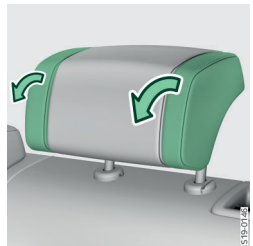
Organiser in the luggage compartment

Overview



Sleep package

Overview



The package includes adjustable headrest parts and a bag with a blanket.

For further details, see » page 67, » page 305.

Rear seat belt parking position

Overview



Personalisation

Overview

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the car's personalised functions to an active Škoda ID user account. Every change to the function settings is automatically saved when the ignition is switched off if the car is within the range of the contractual mobile network.

For further details, see » *page 183*.

Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats

Overview



For further details, see » *page 299*.

Phone box

Overview



For further details, see » *page 303*.

Space for a tablet

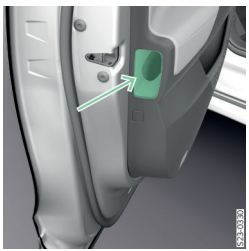
Overview



For further details, see » *page 306*.

Storage compartment for umbrella

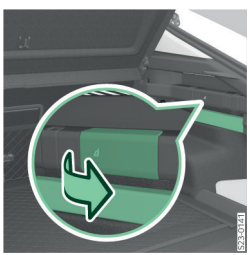
Overview



For further details, see » page 303.

Folding the rear seats backrests from the luggage space

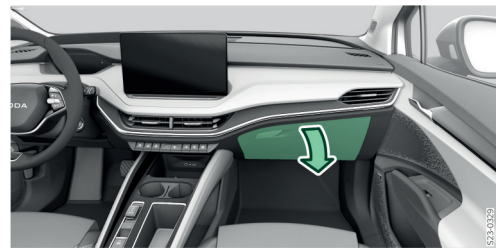
Overview



For further details, see » page 66.

Storage space for cards and coins

Overview



For further details, see » page 300.

SmartLink

Overview

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

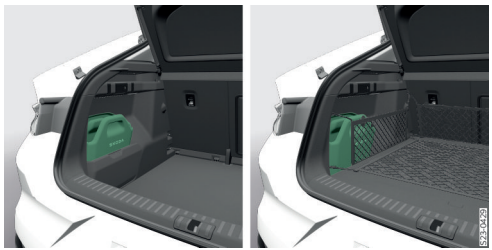
Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

For further details, see » page 160.

Bag for stowing charging cables

Overview



For further details, see » *page 307*.

Towing bracket

Overview





For further details, see » *page 310*.

Securing nets

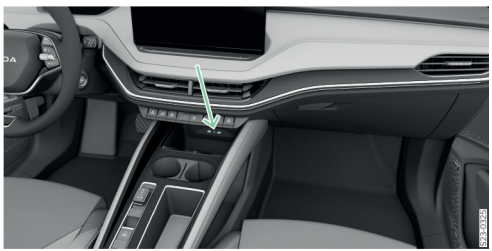
Overview

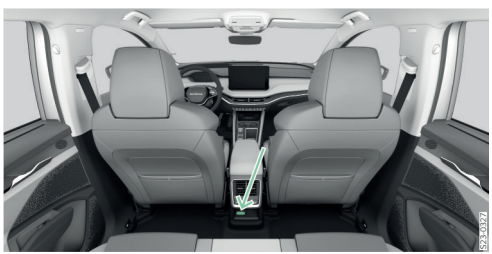


For further details, see » *page 298*.

USB inputs

Overview





For further details, see » *page 308*.

Lockable removable box under the armrest

Overview



Maximum storage compartment load is 1 kg.

Removable box under the armrest

Overview



Maximum storage compartment load is 0.5 kg.

Heaters

Overview

The function allows you to simultaneously switch on the heating of some of the following features:

› Windscreen
› Rear window
› Steering wheel
› Seats

For further details, see » *page 107*.

Škoda Connect

Overview

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, or a link to downloading MyŠkoda application.

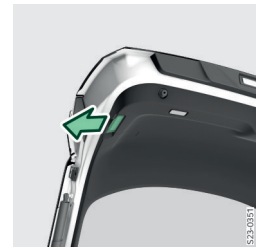
The website will be displayed when the following QR–code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

For further details, see » *page 176*.

Ice scraper

Overview



Index

Numbers and symbols

12V battery
Fault 274
12V vehicle battery 272
Charging 272
Checking the condition 272
Disconnecting and connecting 274
Indicator lights 274
Protection against discharge 272
Safety 33
see 12V vehicle battery 272

A

ABS 200
ACC 210
interrupting the cruise control 213
setting the distance 213
START-STOP system 211
Accident
Data recorder 325
Accident data recorder 325
Acid 272
Adaptive chassis 191
Adaptive Cruise Control 210
Adaptive headlights 96
Air Care 107
Air conditioning system
see Climatronic 106
Airbag 86
Activation 87
Deactivating airbags 88
Fault 88
Location 87
Safety 86
Turning off the passenger front airbag 89
Airbag switch 89
Signalling 89
Alarm 51
trailer 52
All-season tyres 284
Applications for the Infotainment system 187
Armrest
Front 68
Rear 69
Ashtray 305

Assist systems
Driving systems 200
Safety 37
Assistance systems
Parking systems 226
Assistant for keeping your lane
see Lane Assist 214
Auto Hold 198
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 202
Automatic emergency braking 226
Automatic gearbox 189
Automatic power regeneration assistant
see Eco Assist 224

B

Background lighting 101
Backrest
Opening for ski bag 69
Blanket 305
Boot
Fasteners 296
Rigid boot cover 299
Securing nets 298
Boot lid 59
Automatic locking 58
Contactless operation 61
Manual operation 58
Manual release 62
Troubleshooting 60
Brake fluid 196
Safety 33
Brake pads 197
Brakes 196
Breakdown call 186

C

Car seat
see Child seat 76
Cargo elements 296
Carpet in the luggage compartment
Fixing them carpet 298
Central locking 45
SAFE function 45
Central locking button 46
Centre console 23
Charging 246
Battery Care Mode 254
Charging setting options 254
Charging socket 247
Low charge level 249
Plug & Charge 254
Setting up charging points 257
Troubleshooting 249
Charging cables 258
control box 259
Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket 250
Mode 2 259
Mode 3 261
Stowing 294, 307
Types of charging cables 259
Charging time 248
Checking the vehicle before the journey 34

Child lock 54
Child seat 76
Fastened with a safety belt 80
Grouping 78
i-Size 82
ISOFIX 80, 84
Recommended child seats 78
Securing children properly 36
TOP TETHER 84
Types of fasteners 84
Child seats
In the front passenger seat 77
Cleaning the vehicle
Exterior 319
Instructions for cleaning the exterior 320
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 318
Interior 317
Climatronic 106
Setting up air conditioning 108
Coming Home 96
Compartments 300, 301
Contactless operation of the power boot lid – activation 61
Convenience turn signal 93
Coolant
Checking 270
Indicator light 271
Refilling 270
Safety 33
Specification 270
Cooling system 108
Crew Protect Assist
see Proactive Crew Protection 221
Cruise control
Indicator light 207
Cruise control system 207
Cup holder 304
Cyber security 147

D

Data connection 178
Daytime running lights 92
Automatic switching on/off 92
DCC 191
Digital assistant Laura 128
Digital cockpit 115
Digital instrument cluster
see Digital cockpit 115
Doors
Opening/closing 53
Drive power 243
Driver Alert
see Fatigue detection 222
Driver's seat 22
Driving data 117
Resetting 118
Driving modes 190
Comfort 190
Eco 190
Individual 190
Normal 190
Sport 190
Traction 190
Driving performance 243
Driving with a trailer 193

Safety 37
Trailer stability assist 201
Dynamic cornering light
Activation/deactivation 96
Dynamic Light Assist
see Headlight Assist 98

E

e-Sound 199
Earth point 275
eBKV 201
Eco Assist 224
Economical driving style 193
EDS 200
Electric window control 55
Force limiter 54
Electric window operation
Activation 56
Operation 55
Troubleshooting 56
Electrical parking brake 197
Emergency
Emergency call 39
Using the jump start cables 275
What to do after an accident 42
What to do in the event of a fire 42
Emergency Assist 223
see Emergency situations assistant 223
Emergency calls 39
Emergency equipment 295
Tool kit 295
Emergency wheel
Safe driving 37
Engine number 323
ESC 200
ESC Sport 200, 201
Explanations 10
Exterior mirrors 72

F

Fasteners in the boot 296
Fatigue detection 222
Fire extinguisher 295
First aid kit 295
Fog lights
Rear 95
Fogging 110
Front Assist 202
Distance warning 202
Front seats
Electrically controlled 63
Manually controlled 63
Front vehicle area 20
Fuses 277
in the dash panel 278
in the space under the bonnet 280
Replacement 277

H

Hazard warning lights 95
Head-up screen with augmented reality 116
Headlight Assistant 98
Headlight range 91

Headlights
Dynamic cornering light 96
Range control 91
Headrests 67
Heating function 107
High beam 93
Headlight Assist 98
High beam assistant 97
High-voltage battery 240
Charging with alternating current 251
Charging with direct current 252
High-voltage system 240
Hooks
In the boot 296
In the interior 301

I

i-Size 82
Ice scraper 21
Inattention detection 223
Independent air conditioning 110
Independent air-conditioning
Setting the departure time 111
Indicator lights
Introduction 25
Overview 25
Information calls 186
Infotainment Online 187
Instrument cluster
digital cockpit 115
Interior background lighting 101
Interior equipment
12V socket 294, 306
230V power socket 301
230V socket 306
Ashtray 305
Coat hooks 301
Cup holder 304
Make-up mirror 300
Parking permit holder 300
Space for a tablet 306
Storage compartment behind the central console 302
Storage compartment for umbrella 303
Storage compartments 300, 301
Storage pockets 301
Ticket holder 300
Interior lighting 100
Interior mirror 71
ISOFIX 84
Placement in the seat 80
Retaining rings 84

J

Jump start cables 275

K

KESSY
see Keyless locking 49
Key 43
Replacing the battery 44
Keyless locking (KESSY) 49
Locking when leaving the car 50
Unlocking when the key is close to the car 49

L

Labels
Charging cable connector 259
Charging indicator light 247
Child seat 77
High voltage 240
Refrigerant in the air conditioning system 106
Specified tyre pressure values 291
Type of charging connector 250
Lane Assist 214
Lane change assistant
see Side Assist 218
Leaving Home 96
Lever
Headlight Assist 98
High beam 93
Light assist 97
Turn signal 93
Wipers and washers 103
Liability for faults
see Warranty 334
Lifting the vehicle 286
Light Assist
see the High Beam Assistant 97
Light bulbs 99
Front turn signal – replacement 99
Light switch 90
Lighting
Background 101
Exterior 90
Interior 100
Lights 90
Automatic switching on/off 92
Bad weather lights 94
Control 90
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 91
Dynamic cornering light 96
Hazard warning lights 95
Headlamps washers 103
Headlight Assist 98
Headlight flasher 93
Headlight range control 91
High beam 93
Indicator light 94
Parking lights 95
Rear fog light 95
Replacing light bulbs 99
Troubleshooting 92
Turn signal 93
Limiter
see Speed limiter 204
Load distribution 193
Locking 45, 49
Low beam 92
Luggage compartment 294
12V power socket 294
Fixing the carpet 298
Rear seat backrest folding lever 294
Storage boxes 294
towing bracket switch 294
Transporting objects safely 37
Luggage compartment equipment 294

M

MATRIX headlights
see Headlight Assist 98
MCB 200
Media 143
Mirrors
see Exterior mirrors 72
see Interior mirror 71
Mobile devices management 147
Monitoring the surroundings
see Top View 230
MSR 200
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 200

N

Navigation 166
Nets 298
New vehicle or new parts 31

O

On-demand functions 187
Online services
availability 176
Breakdown call 186
Information calls 186
MyŠkoda application 177
Over-the-Air update 183
Personal data 179
Personalisation 183
Setting personal data protection 179
Shop 185
Škoda Connect 176
Škoda Connect services 187
Škoda Connect services user registration and activation 179
User management 180
Opening in the backrest 69

P

Park Assist with memory function
Troubleshooting 238
Park assistant with memory function 237
Park Pilot
see Parking aid 226
Parking
Parking aid 226
Rear Traffic Alert. 232
Rear view camera 228
Safe stopping of the vehicle 39
Parking aid 226, 227
Parking assist systems 226
Parking brake 197
see Electrical parking brake 197
Parking lights 92, 95
Passenger front airbag switch 23
Switch fault 89
Passenger seat 23
Pedestrian detection 203
Personal data 326
Personalisation 183
Phone 150
Phone box 303
Plates

12V vehicle battery 272
Space under the bonnet 33
Type plate 323, 324
Power assisted steering 71
Predictive adaptive Cruise Control 210

R

Radio
DAB radio 135
FM radio 132
WEB radio and Podcasts 138
Radio systems in the vehicle 327
Range 243
Rear fog light 95
Rear lights animation 97
Rear seats
Folding down 66
Rear Traffic Alert 232
Rear vehicle area 21
Rear view camera 228
Operation 229
Recirculated air mode 108
Recycling 332
Refilling
Coolant 270
Windscreen washer fluid 103
Reflective vest 295
Refrigerant
see Air Conditioning 106
Regenerative braking 191
Remote access 187
Remote iV services 187
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 334
Rigid boot cover 299
Roof rack 309
Fixing roof racks 309
Roof loading 309
Safe driving 37

S

SAFE – function 45
Safe driving 37
Safety
Before driving 31
Child seat 36
Climatic conditions 39
Driving through water 37
Emergency call 39
Exiting the vehicle 39
Indicator lights 37
New vehicle or new parts 31
Seat belt webbing 35
Sensors and cameras 32
Sitting correctly 34
Transporting loads and objects 37
Vehicle adjustments 32
What to do after an accident 42
What to do in the event of a fire 42
SEAL tyres 285
Seat belts 74
Adjusting the height 76
Automatic belt retractor 74
Belt tensioners 74

Blocked belt retractor 76
Correct webbing 35
Fastening and unfastening 75
reversible belt tensioners 74
Safety 74
Status screen 74
Seat heating 113
Seat massage function 66
Seat memory 64
Seat ventilation 113
Seats 63
Folding down 66
Heating 113
ISOFIX 84
Seat memory 64
Sitting safely 34
TOP TETHER 84
Ventilation 113
Service events 315
Displaying the due date 315
Intervals 315
Resetting information 315
Service work 316
Setting the tyre pressure 291
Shop 185
Side Assist 218
Side vehicle area 20
Sidelights
see Parking lights 95
Škoda Prepaid service 317
Smart parking assistant 234
Troubleshooting 237
SmartLink 160
Android Auto 161
Apple CarPlay 163
Snow chains 285
Sockets
12V socket 306
230V socket 306
Safety 34
Space for a tablet 306
Space under the bonnet 24
Opening the bonnet 269
Safety 33
Spare wheel
Safe driving 37
Speed limiter 204
Indicator light 204
Speed limiter with predictive control 204
Starting the vehicle
Using the jump start cables 275
Steering column lock 71
Steering wheel 70
Buttons 70, 116
Correct position 36
Heating 114
Steering wheel heating 114
Storage compartment behind the centre console 302
Sunshades 57
Operating the rear windows shades 56
Switching low beam on automatically 92
Switching off passenger front airbag 89
Switching off the passenger front airbag
Signalling 89

System update 183

T

TCS 200
Technical data and specifications 323
Vehicle dimensions 325
The bonnet 269
The boot lid
Setting the top position 60
The Infotainment system
Applications menu 122
Configuration wizard 123
Control centre 127
HOME menu 120
Keypad 127
Laura application 128
Overview 120
Preferred applications 122
Preferred functions 121
Restarting 124
Screen overview 126
Setting 124
Setting the sound 124
System update 124
The main menu 122
Tips for economical driving 193
Tips for faster charging 248
Tool kit 295
TOP TETHER 84
Mounting retaining rings 84
Top View 230
Tow rope 195
Towing bracket 309
Swinging the tow bar in and out 310
Tow bar loading 312
Troubleshooting 312
Towing eye 194
Towing the vehicle 194
Traffic accident
Emergency call 39
What to do after an accident 42
Traffic sign recognition 220
Trailer 193
alarm 52
Coupling and uncoupling 311
Permissible weight 193
Safe driving 37
Trailer stabilization system 201
Transport
Towing bracket 309
Transporting objects safely 37
Transporting children 36
Transporting items
Roof rack 309
Travel Assist 216
Travel assistance
see Travel Assist 216
Trays 300, 301
TSA
see Trailer stability assist 201
Turn signal 93
Type plate 323
Tyre pressure monitor 291
Tyres 282, 284

Overview of labelling 283
Pressure 290, 291
Puncture repair kit 289
Tread wear indicator 283
tyre pressure gauge 295
Tyre pressure monitor 291

U

Umbrella 303
Universal charging cable 262, 267
Control box 263
Exchanging the replaceable cable 264
Troubleshooting 265
Unlocking 45, 49
USB 300, 301
User management 180

V

Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 316
Safety 32
Vehicle dimensions 325
Vehicle height 325
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 323
Vehicle length 325
Vehicle status 118
Vehicle width 325
Vest
see Reflective vest 295
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 323
Voice control 128

W

Wallbox 247
Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle 233
Warning triangle 295
Warranty 334
Mobility Warranty 334
New vehicle warranty 334
Optional Extended Warranty 334
Rights arising from defective performance 334
Washer fluid
Low level 104
Washers
see Wipers and washers 103
Washing in a car wash 319
Washing with a pressure washer 319
Weight 324
Wheels 282
Bolt cover caps 292
Flat tyre 284
Full-width wheel trim 292
Full-width wheel trim Aero 292
Overview of tyre labelling 283
Pressure change 284
Replacing 285, 286
snow chains 285
Tread wear indicator 283
Tyre pressure 290, 291
Tyre pressure monitor 291
Wi-Fi 157
Windows 55

Heating 112
Windows heating 112
Windscreen washer fluid
How to refill the fluid 103
Windscreen wipers and washers
Refilling the windscreen washer fluid 103
Winter tyres 284
Wiper service position 104
Wipers and washers 102
Automatic wiping 103
Folding the wiper arms away 104
Low washer fluid 104
Replacing a wiper blade 105
Wireless phone charging 303

X

XDS+ 200